



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600080636T





**SINNOTT'S**  
**MILITARY CATECHISM:**

ADAPTED TO

**THE REVISED SYSTEM**

OF THE

**"Field Exercise & Evolutions of Infantry."**

BY

**CAPTAIN WILLIAM D. MALTON,**

**DUMFRIES, ROXBURGH, AND SELKIRKSHIRE MILITIA.**

*(Author of "Company and Battalion Drill Illustrated," &c. &c.)*

**THIRTEENTH EDITION.**

**London:**

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY

**W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS.**

---

1860.

*231. c. 51.*

***ENTERED AT STATIONERS' HALL.***



TO  
LIEUT.-GENERAL SIR J. F. LOVE, K.C.B., K.H., &c.

*Inspector-General of Infantry,*

AND TO

THE OTHER OFFICERS OF THE BOARD

APPOINTED TO REVISE THE

“*Field Exercise and Evolutions of the Army,*”

THIS WORK, IN ITS PRESENT FORM,

IS

(WITH THEIR PERMISSION)

DEDICATED

BY

THE EDITOR.



1998, 1999, 2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007, 2008, 2009, 2010, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018, 2019, 2020, 2021, 2022, 2023, 2024, 2025, 2026, 2027, 2028, 2029, 2030, 2031, 2032, 2033, 2034, 2035, 2036, 2037, 2038, 2039, 2040, 2041, 2042, 2043, 2044, 2045, 2046, 2047, 2048, 2049, 2050, 2051, 2052, 2053, 2054, 2055, 2056, 2057, 2058, 2059, 2060, 2061, 2062, 2063, 2064, 2065, 2066, 2067, 2068, 2069, 2070, 2071, 2072, 2073, 2074, 2075, 2076, 2077, 2078, 2079, 2080, 2081, 2082, 2083, 2084, 2085, 2086, 2087, 2088, 2089, 2090, 2091, 2092, 2093, 2094, 2095, 2096, 2097, 2098, 2099, 2100, 2101, 2102, 2103, 2104, 2105, 2106, 2107, 2108, 2109, 2110, 2111, 2112, 2113, 2114, 2115, 2116, 2117, 2118, 2119, 2120, 2121, 2122, 2123, 2124, 2125, 2126, 2127, 2128, 2129, 2130, 2131, 2132, 2133, 2134, 2135, 2136, 2137, 2138, 2139, 2140, 2141, 2142, 2143, 2144, 2145, 2146, 2147, 2148, 2149, 2150, 2151, 2152, 2153, 2154, 2155, 2156, 2157, 2158, 2159, 2160, 2161, 2162, 2163, 2164, 2165, 2166, 2167, 2168, 2169, 2170, 2171, 2172, 2173, 2174, 2175, 2176, 2177, 2178, 2179, 2180, 2181, 2182, 2183, 2184, 2185, 2186, 2187, 2188, 2189, 2190, 2191, 2192, 2193, 2194, 2195, 2196, 2197, 2198, 2199, 2200, 2201, 2202, 2203, 2204, 2205, 2206, 2207, 2208, 2209, 2210, 2211, 2212, 2213, 2214, 2215, 2216, 2217, 2218, 2219, 2220, 2221, 2222, 2223, 2224, 2225, 2226, 2227, 2228, 2229, 2230, 2231, 2232, 2233, 2234, 2235, 2236, 2237, 2238, 2239, 2240, 2241, 2242, 2243, 2244, 2245, 2246, 2247, 2248, 2249, 2250, 2251, 2252, 2253, 2254, 2255, 2256, 2257, 2258, 2259, 2260, 2261, 2262, 2263, 2264, 2265, 2266, 2267, 2268, 2269, 2270, 2271, 2272, 2273, 2274, 2275, 2276, 2277, 2278, 2279, 2280, 2281, 2282, 2283, 2284, 2285, 2286, 2287, 2288, 2289, 2290, 2291, 2292, 2293, 2294, 2295, 2296, 2297, 2298, 2299, 2300, 2301, 2302, 2303, 2304, 2305, 2306, 2307, 2308, 2309, 2310, 2311, 2312, 2313, 2314, 2315, 2316, 2317, 2318, 2319, 2320, 2321, 2322, 2323, 2324, 2325, 2326, 2327, 2328, 2329, 2330, 2331, 2332, 2333, 2334, 2335, 2336, 2337, 2338, 2339, 2340, 2341, 2342, 2343, 2344, 2345, 2346, 2347, 2348, 2349, 2350, 2351, 2352, 2353, 2354, 2355, 2356, 2357, 2358, 2359, 2360, 2361, 2362, 2363, 2364, 2365, 2366, 2367, 2368, 2369, 2370, 2371, 2372, 2373, 2374, 2375, 2376, 2377, 2378, 2379, 2380, 2381, 2382, 2383, 2384, 2385, 2386, 2387, 2388, 2389, 2390, 2391, 2392, 2393, 2394, 2395, 2396, 2397, 2398, 2399, 2400, 2401, 2402, 2403, 2404, 2405, 2406, 2407, 2408, 2409, 2410, 2411, 2412, 2413, 2414, 2415, 2416, 2417, 2418, 2419, 2420, 2421, 2422, 2423, 2424, 2425, 2426, 2427, 2428, 2429, 2430, 2431, 2432, 2433, 2434, 2435, 2436, 2437, 2438, 2439, 2440, 2441, 2442, 2443, 2444, 2445, 2446, 2447, 2448, 2449, 2450, 2451, 2452, 2453, 2454, 2455, 2456, 2457, 2458, 2459, 2460, 2461, 2462, 2463, 2464, 2465, 2466, 2467, 2468, 2469, 2470, 2471, 2472, 2473, 2474, 2475, 2476, 2477, 2478, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2482, 2483, 2484, 2485, 2486, 2487, 2488, 2489, 2490, 2491, 2492, 2493, 2494, 2495, 2496, 2497, 2498, 2499, 2500, 2501, 2502, 2503, 2504, 2505, 2506, 2507, 2508, 2509, 2510, 2511, 2512, 2513, 2514, 2515, 2516, 2517, 2518, 2519, 2520, 2521, 2522, 2523, 2524, 2525, 2526, 2527, 2528, 2529, 2530, 2531, 2532, 2533, 2534, 2535, 2536, 2537, 2538, 2539, 2540, 2541, 2542, 2543, 2544, 2545, 2546, 2547, 2548, 2549, 2550, 2551, 2552, 2553, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557, 2558, 2559, 2560, 2561, 2562, 2563, 2564, 2565, 2566, 2567, 2568, 2569, 2570, 2571, 2572, 2573, 2574, 2575, 2576, 2577, 2578, 2579, 2580, 2581, 2582, 2583, 2584, 2585, 2586, 2587, 2588, 2589, 2590, 2591, 2592, 2593, 2594, 2595, 2596, 2597, 2598, 2599, 2600, 2601, 2602, 2603, 2604, 2605, 2606, 2607, 2608, 2609, 2610, 2611, 2612, 2613, 2614, 2615, 2616, 2617, 2618, 2619, 2620, 2621, 2622, 2623, 2624, 2625, 2626, 2627, 2628, 2629, 2630, 2631, 2632, 2633, 2634, 2635, 2636, 2637, 2638, 2639, 2640, 2641, 2642, 2643, 2644, 2645, 2646, 2647, 2648, 2649, 2650, 2651, 2652, 2653, 2654, 2655, 2656, 2657, 2658, 2659, 2660, 2661, 2662, 2663, 2664, 2665, 2666, 2667, 2668, 2669, 2670, 2671, 2672, 2673, 2674, 2675, 2676, 2677, 2678, 2679, 26

## EDITOR'S PREFACE.

---

THERE is, perhaps, no class of technical works in which extreme clearness and accuracy are more important, or more difficult of attainment, than in Manuals of reference on Drill. At the same time there are few which are subjected to more constant, and severe (because practical), tests.

It was, therefore, not without an adequate sense of the responsibility I was incurring that, at the Publishers' request, I undertook to re-write a book so celebrated in its way as *Sinnott's Catechism*; and no exertion on my part has been wanting, to make the present Edition worthy of the favour which has been justly accorded to its predecessors.

The recent changes in the cautions and words of command; the abolition of the formation of Threes; and, more especially, the introduction of the system—apparently little understood, at any rate very imperfectly carried out, in former days—of making the drill of the Company a direct preparation for that of the Battalion, and the drill of the latter for that of the Brigade; have rendered *Sinnott* so far obsolete, that the greater part of the old matter has proved unavailable.

I have, however, in re-constructing the book, endeavoured to preserve its character, by keeping as closely as possible to Sinnott's classification of the movements and general method of arrangement.

The only additions to the original work of which the space at my disposal has allowed, consist of the words of command for Proving a Company and for the *Manual* and *Platoon*, and a short Glossary.

I have to express my cordial acknowledgments to Colonel Lysons, C.B., Assistant Adjutant-General, who has kindly enabled me to deal with certain points on which the *Field Exercise* is silent; and to Lieut.-Colonel E. A. Whitmore [now Military Secretary in Ireland], to whom I have been indebted for many valuable suggestions while preparing these sheets for the Press.

January 1860.

---

The rapid exhaustion of two revised Editions of this Catechism has afforded me an opportunity of correcting some typographical errors, and inserting a few additional questions which seemed requisite to make the work complete.

W. D. M.

September 1860.

# CONTENTS.

---

SECTION	PAGE
I. Formation of the Company . . . . .	1
II. Dressing . . . . .	6
III. Taking Open and Close Order . . . . .	7
IV. Marching to the Front and Rear . . . . .	11
V. The Side Step . . . . .	19
VI. The Back Step . . . . .	22
VII. Formation of Fours . . . . .	23
VIII. Wheeling, on a Halted and Moveable Pivot, into Line and Column . . . . .	27
IX. A Company wheeling any given number of paces on either Flank, from the Halt . . . . .	33
X. Wheeling of the Company on its Centre . . . . .	36
XI. Wheeling Forward by Subdivisions, or Sections, from Line . . . . .	39
XII. Wheeling Backward by Subdivisions, or Sections, from Line . . . . .	42
XIII. An Open Column of Subdivisions, or Sections, wheeling into Line . . . . .	44
XIV. Marching on an Alignment in Open Column of Subdivisions or Sections . . . . .	46
XV. A Company in Open Column of Subdivisions, or Sections, forming to the Reverse Flank . . . . .	48
XVI. File Marching, and the Flank March by Fours . . . . .	50
XVII. Forming Company, Subdivisions, or Sections, from File or Fours . . . . .	53
XVIII. Countermarching by Files and Ranks . . . . .	56
XIX. Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column Halted . . . . .	59


SECTION	PAGE
XX. Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column on the March . . . . .	62
XXI. The Company in Open Column of Subdivisions, Diminishing Front by breaking off Files . .	65
XXII. Gaining Ground to a Flank by the Echelon March of Subdivisions or Sections . . . .	67
XXIII. To form Close Column of Sections, and Company Square . . . . .	69
XXIV. To form the Rallying Square . . . . .	72
<hr/>	
XXV. Formation of the Battalion on Parade . . . .	75
XXVI. When the Open Column wheels into Line . . .	80
XXVII. When the Battalion in Line takes Open Order .	84
XXVIII. When the Battalion resumes Close Order . . .	87
XXIX. When the Line breaks into Open Column, Right in front . . . . .	ib.
XXX. Marching past in Slow and Quick Time . . .	90
<hr/>	
XXXI. Advancing and Retiring in Line . . . . .	96
XXXII. Charging in Line . . . . .	99
XXXIII. Dressing a Battalion in Line . . . . .	100
XXXIV. When the Battalion advancing in Line passes Obstacles . . . . .	102
XXXV. When the Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a relieving Line	104
XXXVI. Advancing by Wings, and Firing . . . . .	106
XXXVII. Retiring by Wings, and Firing . . . . .	108
<hr/>	
XXXVIII. When the Battalion in Line advances in Open Column from a Flank . . . . .	109

# CONTENTS.

ix

SECTION	PAGE
XXXIX. An Open Column forming Line to the Front, on the March and from the Halt . . . . .	111
XL. An Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank . . . . .	121
XLI. When the Battalion in Line advances in Double Column from the Centre . . . . .	123
XLII. When the Double Column, advancing, forms Line to the Front . . . . .	126
XLIII. A Double Column, Halted and on the March, forming Line to the Right or Left . . . . .	129
XLIV. When the Line retires in Open Column from a Flank . . . . .	131
XLV. When the Line retires in Double Column from both Flanks in Rear of the Centre . . . . .	135
XLVI. When the Battalion in Line moves in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear . . . . .	138
<hr/>	
XLVII. A Battalion in Open, Quarter-distance, or Double Column forming Square . . . . .	140
XLVIII. A Square preparing to resist Cavalry . . . . .	146
XLIX. A Battalion in Square re-forming Column or Double Column . . . . .	148
L. A Battalion in Line forming Square on any named Company; and re-forming Column or Line . . . . .	150
LI. A Battalion in Line or Echellon forming Company Squares; and re-forming Line or Echellon . . . . .	153
LII. A Close Column forming Square; and the Square being re-formed into Column . . . . .	155
LIII. A Square marching in any Direction . . . . .	156
LIV. A Battalion in Line forming Square Two-deep on the two centre Companies; and re-forming Line . . . . .	157
<hr/>	
LV. A Battalion in Line forming Open, Close, or Quarter-distance Column on any named Company . . . . .	161

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
LVI. When the Order of a Column is changed by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front . . . . .	170
LVII. A Column taking ground to a Flank . . . .	174
LVIII. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Wheeling on a fixed and moveable Pivot . . . . .	178
LIX. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Counter-marching by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre . . . . .	182
LX. Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column . . . . .	184
LXI. A Close or Quarter-distance Column Opening from the Front, the Rear, or any named Company . .	186
<hr/>	
LXII. A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company . . . . .	189
<hr/>	
LXIII. A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Deploying into Line . . . . .	192
<hr/>	
LXIV. Oblique Echelon Movements and Formations . .	198
LXV. Direct Echelon Movements and Formations . .	210
<hr/>	
Method of Proving a Company . . . . .	216
Words of Command for the <i>Manual</i> and <i>Platoon</i> . . . .	217
Definitions and Derivations . . . . .	219
<hr/>	

 The reference 'F.E.' is to the corrected Edition of the  
*"Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. 1859."*

\*.\* The words of command given by the Drill Instructor in Company, and by the Battalion Commander (or other mounted Officer) in Battalion, Drill, are printed in **CAPITALS**: all other words of command in *Italics*.

The cautionary word "*Company*" or "*No. —*", always given to a Company, Subdivision, or Section by its leader before he gives any word of command, has (in order to save space) been omitted throughout.

---





## A MILITARY CATECHISM.

---

### *Section I.—Formation of the Company.*

(F. E., pp. 48, 55.)

QUESTION 1.—When a company forms singly, for drill, how do the men fall in?

ANSWER.—In two ranks at close order; the files lightly touching, but without crowding. *Riflemen* fall in with ordered, other troops with shouldered, arms.

Q. 2.—How do the officers and non-commissioned officers take post?

A.—As in *line*. (See Q. 15.)

Q. 3.—What is the average space which each man occupies when he falls in, and assumes the proper position of a soldier?

A.—Twenty-one inches.

Q. 4.—What is the first and great principle of the position of a soldier?

A.—The exact squareness of the shoulders and body to the front.

Q. 5.—How is a company sized?

A.—From flanks to centre; thus:—Place the tallest man on the right, the second tallest on the left, leaving sufficient room between them for the company to form in single rank. Then place the third tallest man on the inner side of the right-hand man, the fourth tallest on the inner side of the left-hand man; and so on, alternately, till they meet in the centre. In the next place, number off; and form two-deep, by causing the 'left' files of the right subdivision to take one pace to the rear and one pace to the right, and the 'left' files of the left subdivision to take one

pace to the *front*, and one pace to the right; the left-hand man of the company also, if a 'right' file, being ordered to take a pace to the front. Lastly, cause the whole to close and dress on the right flank file; taking care that the rear rank covers correctly.

Q. 6.—Having sized the company, how do you tell it off?

A.—From right to left; odd numbers being 'right' files, even numbers 'left' files: into two subdivisions termed 'right' and 'left': and into four sections numbered 1, 2, 3, and 4 from the right.

Q. 7.—Is there no exception to the rule that even numbers are left files, and odd numbers right files?

A.—Yes; if the file on the left of the company is an odd number, that file will nevertheless be a *left* file, and the left file but one, though an even number, will be a right file. (*See p. 23, Q. 2, 3.*)

Q. 8.—What is a blank file?

A.—A file without a rear-rank man.

Q. 9.—Should there be a blank file in a company, which man of the front rank will remain uncovered?

A.—Invariably the third man from the left of the company.

Q. 10.—When a company cannot be divided into subdivisions of equal strength, which will be the stronger of the two subdivisions?

A.—If the company is ordered by the drill instructor to tell off 'as a right company,' the right subdivision; if 'as a left company,' the left subdivision.

Q. 11.—What is the difference between a 'right' and 'left' company?

A.—The former is one the number of which, in the battalion, is uneven; the latter, the number of which is even.

Q. 12.—Of two unequal sections in a subdivision, which will be the stronger?

A.—Always the outer of the two.

Q. 13.—Which is considered the centre of a company?

A.—The left-hand man of the right subdivision; except when the company wheels on its centre to the *right*. (*See* Sec. X., Q. 2.)

Q. 14.—What will a company be considered, while drilling singly?

A.—As one of a battalion, and on that principle will all its movements be regulated. The drill instructor, previously to each movement, will state the supposed battalion formation, thus:—"AS A COMPANY IN LINE" or "AS A COMPANY IN COLUMN, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT:" and the officers, &c., will move at once to their proper places, if not already there.

Q. 15.—How are the officers and non-commissioned officers posted when the company is in *line*?

A.—The captain is on the right of the front rank, covered by his covering-serjeant, who is on the right of the rear rank. The other officers and non-commissioned officers form a third or 'supernumerary' rank, three paces from the rear rank.

Q. 16.—Is the supernumerary rank always three paces from the rear rank, when the company is in *line*?

A.—Yes: whether the rear rank is at close or open order.

Q. 17.—In rear of which files are the supernumerary officers respectively stationed?

A.—The senior in rear of the 2nd file from the left of the company, the junior in rear of the centre. Should there be three supernumerary officers, the junior will be in rear of the 2nd section from the right flank, the next in rear of the 3rd section, and the senior in rear of the 4th.

Q. 18.—How are the supernumerary non-commissioned officers distributed?

A.—They divide the space in rear of their respective subdivisions and sections.

Q. 19.—Where are the drummers and pioneers stationed?

A.—The former in rear of the 2nd section, the latter in rear of the 3rd section; aligned with the supernumerary rank.

Q. 20.—How are the officers and non-commissioned officers posted in a company in column?

A.—The captain on the pivot flank of the front rank; the lieutenant one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank; and the covering-serjeant one pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank. The places of the remaining supernumeraries will be the same as in line, but (except on one occasion: see p. 10, Q. 34.) at one pace distant from the rear rank.

Q. 21.—Where are the drummers and pioneers posted?

A.—When manœuvring, they will be in the supernumerary rank, as in line.

Q. 22.—What is meant by 'the pivot flank' of a company in column?

A.—When a column is right in front (*i.e.* when the company that stands on the right in line is in front), the left of each company; when a column is left in front, the right of each company; will be its pivot flank. (See p. 42.)

Q. 23.—What is meant by the 'reverse flank'?

A.—That opposite to the pivot flank.

Q. 24.—How does the captain change his flank, when required to do so?

A.—As a general rule, whether the company is in line or column, halted or on the march, he changes by the rear.

Q. 25.—Are there no exceptions to that rule?

A.—Yes; in closing (*see* p. 19.); in wheels from line into column, and *vice-versâ*, on moveable pivots; when the company faces (or turns) to the reverse flank; and in the formation of company (subdivisions or sections) to the front from file or fours; he changes his flank by the *front*.

Q. 26.—How do the supernumerary officers change flanks?

A.—By the rear: except when the subdivision (or section) they are leading takes ground by files, or fours, to the reverse flank; and in one other case (*see* p. 124, Q. 9).

Q. 27.—The covering-serjeant ?

A.—Changes, invariably, by the rear. When both captain and coverer change by the rear, the latter will *follow* the former.

Q. 28.—What word must invariably be given by the leader of a company, subdivision, or section, when he changes his flank on the march ?

A.—He will always give "*By the Right*" or "*By the Left*" as he falls in, in his new place; if he changes during a wheel, that word will immediately follow the word "*Forward*."

Q. 29.—In the absence of the captain, lieutenant, or ensign, by whom will their places be taken ?

A.—By the next in rank, whether officer or serjeant.

Q. 30.—In the case of a serjeant supplying the place of an officer, will he perform all the latter's duties ?

A.—Yes: with this exception, that no serjeant will under any circumstances move out in front of the line.

Q. 31.—In taking open order, then, where would be the serjeant's place ?

A.—He would be posted as in close order.

Q. 32.—In what manner should officers and non-commissioned officers give their words of command ?

A.—At the full extent of the voice. Every caution, or cautionary part of a word of command, should be given slowly; the last (or executive) part of a command, sharply and emphatically. When the last word of a caution is a signal for any preparatory movement, it will be separated from the rest of the command by a pause.

Q. 33.—Are bayonets unfixed previously to the commencement of the drill ?

A.—No: all bodies of troops, except such as are acting as light infantry, perform their drill and field movements with fixed bayonets.

Q. 34.—Do serjeants, when in the ranks, fix swords ?

A.—No: except when forming the escort for the colours. (*Circ. Mem.*, 17th Sept., 1859.)

---

[For the method of Proving a company, See p. 216.]

*Section II.—Dressing.*

(F. E., pp, 26, 38.)

Q. 1.—When the command "*Dress*" is given singly, to which flank should the men look in order to take up their dressing?

A.—To that flank whence the sound proceeds.

Q. 2.—What are the faults which they should be cautioned to avoid, in dressing?

A.—Passing the line, turning their heads too much to the flank, and bending back or forward.

Q. 3.—What part of the men's persons will constitute the line of dressing?

A.—Their faces; if therefore, there is even one man in the line who does not stand in the proper position of a soldier, it is impossible that the line can be correctly dressed.

Q. 4.—Describe the proper position of a soldier?

A.—His shoulders and body should be square to the front, heels in a line and closed, toes turned out so that the feet may form an angle of 60 degrees, knees straight, elbows close to the sides, hips rather drawn back, breast advanced, head erect, and the body inclined forward.

Q. 5.—On what depends the true principle of dressing?

A.—On each man being just able to distinguish the lower part of the face of the second man beyond him, on that flank by which he is dressing.

Q. 6.—Ought the rear rank to conform to the dressing of the front rank?

A.—Yes; and to see that they do so, forms part of the supernumeraries' duty.

Q. 7.—In dressing the company, what rule should be observed by its leader?

A.—He should dress the first two or three files on the flank of *appui* (or dressing), and the other files in succession, on the distant point placed for that purpose. Should no distant point be placed, some casual object should invariably be fixed upon. The dressing should be done quickly, and with as little noise as possible.

*Section III.—Taking Open and Close Order.*

(F. E., pp. 55, 58.)

Q. 1.—At what distance are the ranks when at open and close order respectively ?

A.—At open order, three paces ; at close order, one pace.

Q. 2.—Is there no exception to that rule ?

A.—One only ; when a company in column takes open order on the march, the rear rank marks time *one* pace, and will consequently be only *two* paces from the front rank at open order. (Q. 31.)

Q. 3.—How are the pace, or paces, between the ranks measured ?

A.—From heel to heel.

Q. 4.—What caution will be given to the company preparatory to its taking open order from the *halt* ; and why ?

A.—“ AS A COMPANY IN LINE ” : this movement being a practice for that described in Section XXVII.

Q. 5.—What command will follow ?

A.—“ REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.”

Q. 6.—What individuals of the company will move at that word ?

A.—The flank men of the rear rank step back two paces, and face to the right ; and the covering-serjeant takes one pace of 21 inches to his left.

Q. 7.—Why do those men fall to the rear ?

A.—To mark the ground on which the rear rank is to halt and dress at open order.

Q. 8.—How do the officers act at the word “ ORDER ” ?

A.—They recover their swords ; and moving to the front of the company, place themselves one pace in front of the files opposite to which they will stand at open order.

Q. 9.—Which are those files ?



A.—The captain will be opposite to the 2nd file from the right of the company; the lieutenant and ensign in front of the same files they cover when at close order in line.

Q. 10.—What command is next given, and to whom does it apply?

A.—“*MARCH*,” which applies to the officers, covering-serjeant, and to the rear and supernumerary ranks.

Q. 11.—How do the officers and covering-serjeant act at that word?

A.—The former take two paces to their front, glance their eyes to the right, and are dressed by the captain: the coverer steps up into the captain's place.

Q. 12.—Where do the rear and supernumerary ranks move to?

A.—They take two paces to the rear, look to their right, and take up their dressing.

Q. 13.—Does not the word “*MARCH*” also affect the rear-rank flank men?

A.—Yes; they front, and raise their right arms.

Q. 14.—By whom will the rear and supernumerary ranks be dressed?

A.—By the serjeant on the right of the latter.

Q. 15.—Is any word given by the captain, or by the supernumerary serjeant last mentioned?

A.—Yes; the former, when he has dressed the officers, gives the word “*Steady*”: the latter gives “*Dress*” to both the rear and supernumerary ranks before, and “*Eyes front*” after, dressing them.

Q. 16.—Will the captain face to his left in order to dress the officers?

A.—No; he will merely glance his eyes in that direction.

Q. 17.—What is the effect of the captain's word “*Steady*”?

A.—The officers port their swords, and look to their front.

Q. 18.—Of the supernumerary serjeant's word "*Eyes front*"?

A.—The rear and supernumerary ranks, as they respectively get that word, look to their front; the flank men of the former rank dropping their right arms.

Q. 19.—In what will the company be practised while at open order?

A.—In the salute with which a reviewing officer is received by a battalion drawn up in line. (*See Section XXVII., Q. 18.*)

Q. 20.—When close order is to be resumed, what caution is given; and to whom does it apply?

A.—"*REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER*"; on which the officers face to the right, and recover swords.

Q. 21.—What command follows; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"*MARCH*"; on which word the covering-serjeant takes two paces to his rear and one pace to his left, as would be necessary in battalion (to let the supernumerary officers of the company on his right pass through); the lieutenant and ensign move to their places in the supernumerary rank: and the rear and supernumerary ranks take two paces to their front.

Q. 22.—By which flank of the company do the supernumerary officers pass, in moving out to the front and in returning?

A.—They both pass round the left flank.

Q. 23.—When do the captain and covering-serjeant resume their places in line?

A.—The captain, when the supernumerary officers have passed to the rear; the coverer, when the captain is in his place.

Q. 24.—As each officer arrives in his place he will, of course, front?

A.—Yes; and carry his sword.

Q. 25.—If a company is to take open order *on the march*, will it be considered as in line or column?

A.—As in column, right in front.

Q. 26.—In what time will the company be ordered to march?

A.—In slow time.

Q. 27.—What will be done by the drill instructor; and what caution will he give, before he puts the company in motion?

A.—He will place 3 points; and will caution the rear rank to lock up.

Q. 28.—What word will he give before the company reaches the 1st of the three points?

A.—“COMPANY, BY THE RIGHT”, on which the captain, coverer, and lieutenant will change their flanks.

Q. 29.—Why will the rear rank be ordered to lock up; and the company to march in slow time, and by the *right* although right is in front?

A.—Because this movement is a practice for ‘marching past in slow time’; and the officers must be placed as on the saluting alignment. (See Section XXX., Q. 7, 32.)

Q. 30.—What command is next given; and by whom?

A.—“*Rear rank take open order*,” by the captain, as he reaches the 1st of the three points. (See p. 91, Q. 9.)

Q. 31.—How is open order taken?

A.—By the rear rank marking time one pace.

Q. 32.—How do the officers act at the word “*Order*”?

A.—They recover their swords; and move out, in double time, to their places in front of the company: porting their swords as they then take up the slow time.

Q. 33.—Which are their places in front of the company?

A.—Precisely those they occupy when the company takes open order in line. (Q. 9.)

Q. 34.—How do the supernumerary rank and covering-serjeant act?

A.—The former marks time three paces, stepping off at the 4th pace: the latter moves up into the captain’s place, and leads the company.

Q. 35.—Is not the supernumerary rank, in column, *one* pace from the rear rank?

A.—Yes; this case forms the one exception to that rule.

Q. 36.—When the company arrives within 10 paces from the 2d point, how will the officers proceed?

A.—They will commence the salute as described in Section XXX. Q. 11-13.

Q. 37.—By whose command, and when, will close order be resumed?

A.—On reaching the 3rd point, the captain will give "*Rear rank take close order*"; on which word the rear rank will close on the front rank; and the officers will recover their swords, move to the places they occupied before moving out to the front, take up the step, and carry swords.

Q. 38.—How does the rear rank close on the front?

A.—By lengthening its pace.

Q. 39.—By which flank do the supernumerary officers pass to the front, and return to the rear of the company?

A.—By the left flank; as in taking open and close order in *line*.

#### *Section IV.—Marching to the Front and Rear.*

(F. E., pp. 12-22, 37, 58.)

Q. 1.—Before the drill instructor puts the company in motion, what will he carefully ascertain?

A.—That the men are accurately dressed, and that each is placed exactly in the proper position of a soldier; for it is impossible that a company can advance correctly, while there is in its ranks a single individual whose shoulders and body are not square to the front.

Q. 2.—In addition to the usual caution "As a COMPANY IN LINE (or COLUMN)", what command will precede the caution "QUICK (or SLOW) MARCH"?

A.—"THE LINE (or COLUMN) WILL ADVANCE (or RETIRE)"; on which the company leader, if the company—being in *line*—is ordered to advance; or—being in *column*—is ordered either to advance or retire; will select

a distant and intermediate point perpendicular to his front, on which to march when the company is put in motion.

Q. 3.—Why does not the company leader select marching points when the company being in *line* is ordered to *retire*?

A.—Because in that case he will march in the proper front rank; and his covering-serjeant will be responsible for the direction.

Q. 4.—At about what distance should the marching points be; and why should there be two?

A.—The distant point should be about 150 yards, the intermediate point about 70 yards, distant. Two points are the smallest number on which it is possible to march.

Q. 5.—On the caution that the line or column will advance, does the rear rank close on the front?

A.—No; that practice is discontinued, except in the single instance of a column marching past. (*See* Section XXX., Q. 32.)

Q. 6.—Do the rear-rank men always step off at a full pace of 30 inches?

A.—They do; unless the company is standing with ordered arms when the caution "SLOW" or "QUICK" is given, and is not directed to shoulder. In that case, the rear-rank men will make their first step a short one, to give sufficient room for the arms, which will be trailed as the men step off on the word "MARCH."

Q. 7.—Do not the men, then, trail if marched off when standing with *carried* arms?

A.—No; they will slope, except when the caution is "SLOW," or when wheeling on a standing pivot, or taking a named number of paces to the front; in either of which cases they will remain at the carry.

Q. 8.—Is there not a distinction made in the case of *Riflemen*?

A.—Yes; except in the three instances last mentioned, *Riflemen*, whether at the 'shoulder' or the 'order,' *trail* as they step off.

Q. 9.—Suppose men standing with ordered, or carried, arms are directed to close, to step back, or to take any *named* number of paces to the front?

A.—If at the ‘order’, they will move with their arms at the ‘short trail,’ and will come again to the order when they halt: if at the ‘carry,’ will remain so.

Q. 10.—To return to the immediate subject of this *Section*:—Suppose the company is ordered to retire, and there is a blank file?

A.—The uncovered front-rank man will, when the company has been faced about, step up in line with the proper rear rank.

Q. 11.—How should the men be instructed to march?

A.—In marching, each man must maintain the position described in the answer to Q. 4, of *Section II.*; the movement of the leg must spring from the haunch, and be free and natural; the foot must be raised sufficiently high to clear the ground without grazing it, be carried straight to the front, and (without being drawn back) placed softly on the ground, so as not to shake or jerk the body.

Q. 12.—What constitutes the principal guide of the men in marching?

A.—The light touch of the files to the pivot or directing flank.

Q. 13.—How is the touch to be maintained?

A.—With the thick part of the arm immediately below the elbow.

Q. 14.—Can the touch be always thus kept?

A.—No; not when the men are marching with arms *sloped*, by the left.

Q. 15.—How is it preserved in that case?

A.—With the elbow.

Q. 16.—Is it not essential too, that each man should regulate his cadence and length of pace by the man on his pivot flank?

A.—Yes. It should, however, be recollected, although the men are guided, in those particulars, by the pivot flank, it is not the less necessary that every man should preserve his shoulders and body square to the front, and on no account glance his eyes to either flank.

Q. 17.—While the company advances, where will the instructor frequently place himself?

A.—In the rear of the directing flank, that being the point whence he can best ascertain whether the company is marching direct to its front.

Q. 18.—How many times of marching are there?

A.—Three; the *slow*, *quick*, and *double*.

Q. 19.—How many paces are taken in a minute in several degrees of march; and what is the length of a pace?

A.—Men moving in *slow* time take 75 paces a minute; each pace measuring 30 inches; in *quick* time 108 paces, each of 30 inches; in *double* time 150 paces, each of 30 inches.

Q. 20.—While the company advances in line, in what time will it be practised?

A.—In marking time at *slow*, *quick*, and *double* time; in stepping out, stepping short, changing feet, and stepping back, both in *slow* and *quick* time; also in the *side step* in *quick* time only, and in the diagonal march.

Q. 21.—When a company on the march is required to mark time, what command is given?

A.—“MARK TIME.”

Q. 22.—Does the foot which is advancing when the command is given, complete its pace?

A.—Yes: after which, though the regular cadence is to be continued, no ground is to be gained.

Q. 23.—What command is given when the men are to resume their regular pace of 30 inches?

A.—“FORWARD.”

Q. 24.—How is time marked in the *slow*, and how in the *quick* cadence?

A.—In the former, each foot alternately is thrown out and brought back square with the other: in the latter, the feet are simply moved up and down.

Q. 25.—What is the word of command for marking time from the halt?

A.—“MARK TIME. SLOW (*or* QUICK).”

Q. 26.—May troops, in whatever degree of march they are moving, be ordered to mark time?

A.—Yes: *see* A. to Q. 20.

Q. 27.—What is the length of pace which each man takes when the command “STEP OUT” is given?

A.—Thirty-three inches.

Q. 28.—What should the men be warned against, in stepping out?

A.—Against quickening the proper time of marching.

Q. 29.—When it is intended that the men, from stepping out, should resume the ordinary pace of 30 inches, what command is given?

A.—“SLOW” if they are moving in slow time; “QUICK” if they are moving in quick time.

Q. 30.—Is the command “STEP OUT” ever given to men who are marching in double time?

A.—No.

Q. 31.—Are not the men, on receiving the command “SLOW” or “QUICK” from stepping out, apt to slacken the time?

A.—Yes; and should therefore be cautioned to avoid so doing.

Q. 32.—When is stepping short useful?

A.—When a slight check is required.

Q. 33.—What command is given in order to march by this step?

A.—“STEP SHORT.”

Q. 34.—Does each man step short the instant the command is given?



A.—No: he will take a full pace with the foot which was advanced when the command was given, and then step short.

Q. 35.—What is the length of pace taken by each man when stepping short?

A.—Ten inches.

Q. 36.—What fault are men apt to commit, when ordered to step short?

A.—They generally slacken the time.

Q. 37.—When the drill instructor intends the men to step off at full pace, what command will he give?

A.—“FORWARD.”

Q. 38.—What command is given when a company is to take ground to a flank by the diagonal march?

A.—“RIGHT, *or* LEFT, HALF TURN,” according to the flank to which ground is to be taken.

Q. 39.—What should each man guard against, during the diagonal march?

A.—Against allowing the arm which is next to the flank inclined to, to get beyond the centre of the back of the man who precedes him in echelon.

Q. 40.—Which is the directing flank during the diagonal march?

A.—That to which the men are gaiping ground.

Q. 41.—Will the captain, then, and his covering-serjeant shift to that flank, if a company in column takes ground to the reverse flank?

A.—No; they will remain on the proper pivot flank; the lieutenant moving up on the reverse flank.

Q. 42.—During the diagonal march, does each rear-rank man cover his proper front-rank man?

A.—No; if the command is “RIGHT HALF TURN,” he covers the man on the right of his front-rank man; if it is “LEFT HALF TURN,” he covers the man on the left of his front-rank man.

Q. 43.—When sufficient ground has been gained to the flank, what command is given?

A.—“FRONT TURN.”

Q. 44.—In what proportion does the diagonal march gain ground to a flank, and to the front?

A.—For every ten paces a company takes diagonally it will gain about seven paces to the front, and seven paces to the flank inclined to. The same distance will be gained, therefore, in each direction.

Q. 45.—Is there not another mode of gaining ground in a diagonal direction to a flank?

A.—Yes; the echelon march of sections. (*See Section XXII.*)

Q. 46.—With which foot do men take the first pace in all marchings?

A.—With the left; except when ordered to close to the right by the side step.

Q. 47.—Is it always necessary to halt the company, in order to change the time of marching?

A.—No; the marching of the company may be changed from *Slow* to *Quick* and *Double*, from *Quick* to *Double*, from *Double* to *Quick*, or from *Quick* to *Slow*, without halting the men.

Q. 48.—May the degree of marching be changed from *Double* to *Slow*?

A.—Not without first halting the men, or giving “*QUICK*.”

Q. 49.—What command is given when it is necessary to change the degree of marching?

A.—“*SLOW*,” “*QUICK*,” or “*DOUBLE*,” according to the degree of march required.

Q. 50.—Against what should the men be cautioned, in the double march?

A.—Against taking less than 36 inches at each pace.

Q. 51.—If they are not habituated to that length of pace in the double march, what will be the consequence?

A.—They will acquire the habit of a short trot, which would entirely defeat the advantage of that degree of march.

Q. 52.—May the time of marching ever be marked by taps of the drum, while the men are marching?

A.—No; on no account must the time be marked while the men are moving.

Q. 53.—May the words *right, left*, be given when the men are marching?

A.—No; they answer the same purpose as taps of the drum.

Q. 54.—When is the time to be marked by taps of the drum?

A.—Immediately before the men march off.

Q. 55.—May the men be ordered to turn to either flank, or to the rear, without halting?

A.—Yes.

Q. 56.—What are the commands given when men are required to turn on the march?

A.—Precisely those given for *facing*, substituting the word "TURN" for the word "FACE."

Q. 57.—Are men ever to receive the command "FORWARD," after turning, or turning about, on the march?

A.—Never.

Q. 58.—What time is to be occupied in turning to the right-about or left-about?

A.—The time necessary for taking three paces.

Q. 59.—Are not the men materially assisted in turning on the march, by receiving the commands at a proper time?

A.—Yes; they will always be ordered to turn to the right as the left foot is placed on the ground; and *vice versa*.

Q. 60.—When men receive the command "FRONT TURN," how do they obey it?

A.—By turning to that hand which is nearest their front.

Q. 61.—At the command “HALT”, does every man take a full pace with that foot which is off the ground?

A.—Yes; and the rear foot will then be brought up in line with the advanced foot, so as to finish the step which was being taken when the word “HALT” was given.

Q. 62.—Is there no case in which the rear rank has to take a longer pace when coming to the halt?

A.—Yes; when the men *trailed* as they stepped off. (Q. 6.)

Q. 63.—How are arms carried at the word “HALT”?

A.—If the men are at the ‘slope’, they *carry*; if at the ‘trail’, they *order*.

Q. 64.—Can men turn to the right-about or left-about with sloped or trailed arms?

A.—No: they will, therefore, if at the ‘slope’ carry, or if at the ‘trail’ will bring the rifles to a perpendicular position, on the 1st pace of the turn; and will slope, or trail, again on the 4th pace.

Q. 65.—How are the feet turned out in marching?

A.—At an angle of 30 degrees.

---

### Section V.—The Side Step.

(F. E., pp. 35, 76.)

Q. 1.—When is the side, or closing, step necessary?

A.—When a very small distance is to be gained to a flank.

Q. 2.—In what time is the side step to be practised?

A.—In *quick* time.

Q. 3.—How many paces are gained in a minute, in closing to a flank?

A.—Precisely the same number as would be gained to the front in the same time.

Q. 4.—What part of the position of the soldier is apt to be lost, by men who are closing by the side step?

A.—The most essential part, the *squareness of the shoulders and body to the front*; care should, therefore, be taken to prevent men turning their heads too much to the flank to which they are closing.

Q. 5.—Are the men, then, to turn their heads to the closing flank?

A.—Yes; at the last word of the command "*RIGHT (or LEFT) CLOSE, QUICK MARCH,*" they turn their eyes to that flank to which they are ordered to close; looking to the front when halted.

Q. 6.—Are the knees bent in closing?

A.—No: except in closing on rough or broken ground, when they must necessarily be bent.

Q. 7.—What is the length of each pace taken in closing?

A.—Ten inches.

Q. 8.—If the man on the closing, or directing, flank takes more or less than ten inches in each pace, ought the others to conform to his pace?

A.—Yes; every other man should carry his right or left foot to that of the man next to him, on the flank closed to.

Q. 9.—If the company is one of a battalion in *column*, and is ordered to close by the side step to its right or left, does its captain step to the front?

A.—No.

Q. 10.—Suppose the number of paces to be closed is not specified?

A.—Whether the number of paces to be closed is stated or not, the captain remains on the pivot flank, and closes with his company.

Q. 11.—Is there not one exceptional case in which he will *not* close with his company in column?

A.—Yes; if he has, previously to the caution, taken up fresh covering, he will stand fast and order the company to close to him.

Q. 12.—Suppose the company is one of a battalion in *line*, and is ordered to close to its right or left, how does its commander proceed?

A.—That depends on the command given by the officer commanding the battalion.

Q. 13.—Should the company be cautioned to close a specified number of paces to its right or left, does its leader move out to the front?

A.—No: he remains in the line.

Q. 14.—If it is cautioned to close *without* the number of paces being specified, does its leader move out?

A.—Yes: he moves out, and places himself three paces in front of that flank of his company which is nearest to the centre of the line; facing the men.

Q. 15.—Suppose the closing is to the *left*, will the captain, in moving opposite to the left flank of the company, pass by the front or rear?

A.—By the front. (*See p. 4, Q. 25.*)

Q. 16.—Why is the captain, when his company closes, placed opposite its inner flank?

A.—In order to halt his men at the proper time, as well as to superintend their closing.

Q. 17.—Does the captain remain halted while his company closes?

A.—No: he closes with it.

Q. 18.—When he has halted his company does he, if in front of its left, pass by the front or by the rear, to resume his post in line?

A.—By the rear.

Q. 19.—When the captain steps to the front, who preserves his place in the line?

A.—His covering-serjeant.

Q. 20.—When the number of paces to be closed is stated, will the word "HALT" be given?

A.—No.

Q. 21.—When a company of a battalion in line close to its left, a specified number of paces, to let files of its own come up on its right, do its leader and his covering-sergeant close with it?

A.—No; they remain halted.

Q. 22.—Do they remain halted, when, in order to admit files on the right of their company, the company on their right closes to its right?

A.—No; they close with the company on their right.

Q. 23.—When do they close with their own company?

A.—Always when closing to the centre of the battalion.

Q. 24.—Suppose a company at drill is closing 'as in line', no number of paces named, how will the captain know when to halt it?

A.—A point will be placed by the drill instructor.

---

### Section VI.—The Back Step.

(F. E., pp 20, 40.)

Q. 1.—In what time is the back step taken?

A.—In *slow* time; except in wheeling backwards, when it is always taken in *quick*.

Q. 2.—What command is given when the men are to step back in slow time?

A.—“STEP BACK. SLOW MARCH.”

Q. 3.—When the command “HALT” is given, is the foot in rear to be brought up in a line with that in front?

A.—No; the foot in front must be brought back square with the other.

Q. 4.—If the ground which is to be taken to the rear be considerable, would it not be better to face the men about, and so dispense with stepping back?

A.—Yes; the back step is only intended to be applied for a very few paces.

Q. 5.—What are the faults which men are apt to commit, and against which you should caution them, in stepping back?

A.—Looking on the ground, leaning back, shortening the pace, and quickening the time of marching.

---

### Section VII.—*Formation of Fours.*

(F. E., pp. 42, 75.)

Q. 1.—What is the rule with respect to right and left files in forming four-deep from the halt?

A.—After the rear rank has stepped back, the right files will not move off their ground, but the left files will form upon them.

Q. 2.—Suppose the file on the left of the company is an odd number.

A.—That file will then be considered a *left* file; and the file on its right, although an even number, will be considered a *right* file. (*See* Sec. I., Q. 7.)

Q. 3.—Why?

A.—In order that there may always be a complete rank of fours on the left of the company.

Q. 4.—How will the rear-rank man of the odd file be aligned, when the fours are formed?

A.—With the *left* files of the rear rank.

Q. 5.—If four-deep is to be formed to the front, what command is given?

A.—“FOURS, DEEP.”

Q. 6.—Who will move at that command?

A.—At the word “FOURS”, the whole of the rear rank will take a pace of twelve inches to the rear. At the word “DEEP”, the whole of the left files of the front and rear ranks will take a pace to the rear with the left foot, and a side step to the right with the right foot; doubling, by that means, in rear of the right files.

Q. 7.—How is four-deep formed to the *right*?



A.—At the word “FOURS” the rear rank steps back as before; and at the word “RIGHT” which follows, the whole face to the right. The left files then take a side step to their right with the right foot, and a pace to their new front with the left foot.

Q. 8.—Are fours formed to the *left* in precisely the same manner?

A.—No; there is a difference in the two formations. In forming to the left; after the rear rank has stepped back as usual, and the whole have faced to the left, the left files step *back* to the left of the right files, by taking a side step to the left and then a pace backwards with the right foot.

Q. 9.—Describe the formation of fours to the *rear*?

A.—At the word “FOURS”, the rear rank steps back as usual. At the following word “ABOUT,” the whole face to the right-about: the left files then take a pace to their present front with the right foot, and a pace to their present left with the left foot.

Q. 10.—In what time are all those paces taken by the left files.

A.—Invariably in *slow* time.

Q. 11.—What is the length of each side pace taken by the left files?

A.—Twenty-one inches.

Q. 12.—Why are not those side steps to be of the same length as other side steps?

A.—Because were the left files to take but ten inches in each side step, they must take two side steps in order to cover the right files; and as they are to take one side step only, that step must be one of twenty-one inches.

Q. 13.—By what command does the company re-form two-deep from four-deep.

A.—By the command “FRONT”: at which word the men, if fours had been formed to a flank or to the rear, make a correct face to their front; the left files move up into their proper intervals in line; and the rear rank then closes to its proper distance from the front rank.

Q. 14.—How soon after fronting, do the right files of the rear rank close on those of the front rank?

A.—Not till the time necessary for taking two paces has elapsed: in order that the left files may get into their places, and that the whole of the rear rank may close together.

Q. 15.—How is four-deep formed to a *flank*, while the company is advancing or retiring?

A.—At the word "FOURS", the rear rank if the company is advancing, the *proper* front rank if it is retiring, will mark time one pace. At the word "RIGHT (or LEFT)", the men turn to the named flank, and the right files mark time two paces while the left move to their places as when the movement is done from the halt: on the 3rd pace, the whole move on steadily in the new direction.

Q. 16.—How will the left files get into their places, and the rear rank gain its proper distance from the front rank, when "FRONT (or REAR) TURN" is given?

A.—The right files, after the whole have turned to the front or rear as the case may be, will mark time (as before) two paces for the left to get into their places: the distance between the ranks will be corrected by the rear-rank right files gaining a little ground to the front while they are marking time.

Q. 17.—Can a company, while moving by fours to a flank, form two-deep?

A.—Yes: at the word "FORM TWO-DEEP" the left files have only to fall back, or step up, into their places in file, and the rear rank then to close on the front rank.

Q. 18.—When "FOURS DEEP" is given?

A.—The rear rank will incline from the front rank, and the left files will resume their places in fours.

Q. 19.—Can a company advancing or retiring, form four-deep to *its present front*?

A.—Yes; the right files marking time one pace for the rear rank to gain its distance, and then two paces for the left files to get into their places.

Q. 20.—How does a company that has formed four to the front or rear, *close*?

A.—If the company is at the halt, the four men on the named flank (or in the centre) stand fast: the remainder close by the side step. If on the march, the files on which the closing is to be made continue to move straight to their front, at a short pace; the remainder closing on them by the diagonal march.

Q. 21.—When “RE-FORM TWO-DEEP” is given?

A.—The four men on whom the closing was made will stand fast, or, if the company is advancing, will shorten their paces; the remainder will open out by the side step, or, if on the march, will incline outwards. The left files move up into their places, in succession, as the intervals are opened; and the rear rank at the same time regains its proper distance.

Q. 22.—How do the officers act, when a company is closed and opened out as above described?

A.—They simply close and open out with the company.

Q. 23.—When the company marches to a flank by four, where do its leader and covering-serjeant march?

A.—The former next to the front-rank man of the leading four; the latter at the head of the front rank.

Q. 24.—Where do the supernumerary officers march?

A.—The lieutenant (unless leading the company: see Q. 26) on the reverse flank of the 2nd four from the rear of the Company; the ensign in rear of the centre.

Q. 25.—What is the rule with respect to company leaders, when, in *battalion*, a column takes ground to a flank by fours?

A.—They march on that flank of the leading four which is nearest to the ‘company of direction’ (see Sec. XXXIV., Q. 8). If the column is at *close* distance, the leader of each company (except that which is at the head of the column) will march at the head of its front rank.

Q. 26.—Who are the company leaders when, in *battalion*, a column takes ground to a flank by fours?

A.—The captains if ground is taken to the pivot flank ; the lieutenants, if to the reverse flank : unless the former are ordered to change their flanks. (*See* Sec. XVI., Q. 6.)

Q. 27.—Where do the coverer and supernumeraries march, when a *close* column takes ground by fours to a flank ?

A.—The former, if on the leading flank, at the head of the 2nd rank ; the latter between the fours.

---

*Section VIII.—Wheeling, on a Halted and Moveable Pivot, into Line and Column.*

(F. E., pp. 59—62, 69.)

Q. 1.—What are the faults which men should be careful to avoid, in wheeling ?

A.—Crowding on, or flying from, the standing or pivot flank ; stooping forward, looking down, and quickening the time.

Q. 2.—To which flank should they look, and to which should they preserve the touch, during the wheel ?

A.—They should preserve the touch to the standing flank, and look outwards to the wheeling one.

Q. 3.—Is there not one man of the company who does *not* look outwards ?

A.—Yes: the outward man looks inwards ; and becomes, during the wheel, a kind of base for the others to conform to, so as to maintain uniformity of front.

Q. 4.—Does the outward man step at a lengthened pace during the wheel ?

A.—No ; whether the wheel is made on a halted or moveable pivot, he steps at the regular pace of 30 inches.

Q. 5.—What is the difference between wheeling on a ‘halted’ and wheeling on a ‘moveable’ pivot ?

A.—In the former case, the company wheels from the halt, and the pivot man *faces* into the new direction on the

caution ; in the latter case, the company wheels when in movement, and the pivot man—instead of facing on the caution—brings his shoulder round with the rest of the company at the word “**MARCH**”, circling round the wheeling point with very short paces.

Q. 6.—When a halted company is required to wheel so that “**FORWARD**” or “**HALT**” may be given at any period of the wheel, what caution will be first given : and what is that description of wheel termed ?

A.—The caution “**RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL**” will be preceded by the words “**ON THE MOVE**” ; and the pivot man will proceed exactly as when the company wheels on the march. This is called ‘wheeling on a moveable pivot from the halt.’

Q. 7.—When a company in line, halted, is required to wheel into column (right in front) on a *fixed* pivot, what caution is given ?

A.—“**OPEN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT.**”

Q. 8.—Whom will that caution cause to move ?

A.—The captain, who, moving out in quick time, will place himself one pace in front of the centre of the company ; the covering-serjeant, who will run to the rear to mark where the right of the company will rest ; and the left-hand man of the front rank, who will face to the right.

Q. 9.—How does the captain face, when he moves opposite the centre of the company ?

A.—To the front.

Q. 10.—How does the covering-serjeant give his point ?

A.—Standing with shouldered arms, raising his left arm from the elbow, and facing in the direction in which the company will face when in column.

Q. 11.—Does not the rear-rank left-hand man of the company uncover, when the pivot man faces ?

A.—No ; when a company is wheeled backwards, whether the men are faced about to wheel or not, the rear-rank man of the pivot file does not uncover.

Q. 12.—Will the company be wheeled backwards on its left, or will it be faced about in order to wheel into column?

A.—It will invariably be faced about; seeing that a quarter circle will be wheeled. (See p. 35, Q. 13.)

Q. 13.—What command will follow “RIGHT-ABOUT-FACE”?

A.—“RIGHT WHEEL, QUICK MARCH”; on which the men will step off, and the captain will move to the left, or pivot, flank of the company.

Q. 14.—By whom is the company halted and fronted, when it has wheeled square?

A.—By the captain, who gives “*Halt, front: dress,*” and immediately falls in on the pivot flank, and looks to his front.

Q. 15.—What rule should be observed by the captain in giving that word; and why?

A.—The word should not be given till the company has wheeled well back; in order that the men may dress forward instead of having to dress back.

Q. 16.—Will not the captain, before falling in, dress the company?

A.—No; in column the men correct their own dressing; and the captain looks to his covering without regarding them.

Q. 17.—When will the lieutenant move across to his place; and the coverer take post in column?

A.—The former while the men are wheeling; the latter at the captain's word “*Dress.*”

Q. 18.—When do the supernumerary rank correct their distance from three paces to one pace from the rear rank?

A.—At the captain's word “*Dress.*”

Q. 19.—Suppose a company standing in line is ordered to wheel into column *left* in front: how will the right-hand man face on the caution?

A.—He will face to his left; and the company, after being faced about, will wheel to the left.

Q. 20.—What other difference will there be, in the case of forming column left in front?

A.—The lieutenant will not have to change his flank during the wheel; the coverer will mark the *left* of the company; and the captain will take post on the *right* when in column. (See page 4, Q. 20, 22.)

Q. 21.—When a company in line *on the march* is required to wheel into column, what command is given?

A.—“COMPANY, RIGHT WHEEL,” or “LEFT WHEEL,” according as the intention is to form column right or left in front.

Q. 22.—How will the captain, coverer, and lieutenant get to their places in column?

A.—If the wheel is to the left, the captain will simply wheel with the company; and the lieutenant will correct his distance from the rear rank, and the covering-serjeant fall back to his place in column, during the wheel. If the wheel is to the right, the captain will move straight to his front at a short pace during the wheel, so as to meet the left of the company as it completes the quarter circle; taking post at the word “FORWARD”: the lieutenant and covering-serjeant will change flanks during the wheel.

Q. 23.—When a company in line, halted, is ordered to wheel to the right or left “ON THE MOVE,” when does the pivot man face?

A.—The pivot man does not face at all; but commences circling round with the rest of the company at the word “MARCH.” (See Q. 5.)

Q. 24.—Will the captain, coverer, and supernumeraries, also, proceed as when the wheel into column is made on the march?

A.—Yes: in every respect.

Q. 25.—State the immediate object of the word “ON THE MOVE” preceding the caution, when a halted line is to form column?

A.—That word will enable the drill instructor to give “FORWARD” when the quarter circle has been wheeled. Without that word, the pivot man would, on the caution,

face to his right or left, and his being stationary would prevent the company getting "FORWARD."

Q. 26.—In what case is the wheel on a *moveable* pivot from a halted line into column, inapplicable?

A.—When it is required to break into a column the pivot flanks of which are to be on the present alignment.

Q. 27.—When does the supernumerary rank gain its proper distance from the rear rank, if the wheel is made on a moveable pivot?

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 28.—When a company "AS IN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT" is required to wheel into line from the halt, what caution is given, and to whom does it apply?

A.—"LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE." At that caution, the captain places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the left of the company; the covering-serjeant runs to the front and marks the spot where the right of the company will rest in line: and the pivot man faces to his left and raises his right arm.

Q. 29.—How does the covering-serjeant give his point?

A.—He stands, with shouldered arms, facing to the new front, and raising his left arm; aligned with the pivot man.

Q. 30.—Does not the supernumerary rank step back, so as to be at its proper distance from the rear rank when the wheel is completed?

A.—No; it will gain that distance during the wheel.

Q. 31.—At the word "MARCH" the men, of course, step off; where does the captain move to?

A.—He turns towards the men, and moves back round the pivot man, to be ready to dress the company from the left.

Q. 32.—Is it a rule that a company wheeling on a halted pivot from column into line is dressed from its pivot flank?

A.—An invariable rule.



Q. 33.—By whom will the company be halted when in line?

A.—By the captain; the word "*Halt*" being given when the wheeling flank is two paces in rear of the covering-serjeant to whom it is wheeling up.

Q. 34.—Why *two* paces?

A.—For the same reason that the company is allowed to wheel well back before being halted and fronted in column (Q. 15); viz. that the dressing may be *forward*.

Q. 35.—What word will follow "*Halt*," and what pause should be allowed between the two words?

A.—The word "*Dress*," without any pause.

Q. 36.—Is any further word given by the captain?

A.—After dressing the company he will give "*Eyes front*", and change to the right flank, his proper post in line.

Q. 37.—By the front or rear?

A.—By the rear; according to the general rule, the only exceptions to which have already been mentioned. (See p. 4, Q. 25.)

Q. 38.—When will the lieutenant change his flank, and the coverer fall back to his place on the right of the rear rank?

A.—The former, during the wheel; the latter, at the captain's word "*Eyes front*."

Q. 39.—How does a company standing in column *left* in front wheel into line?

A.—As when right is in front; except that the pivot man faces, and the company wheels, to the *right*.

Q. 40.—When does the pivot man of a company wheeled from column into line, drop his arm?

A.—At the captain's word "*Eyes front*."

Q. 41.—When a company wheels *on a moveable pivot* from column into line, how does the captain, if (right being in front) he is on the left, get to his place in line?

A.—By moving straight to his front at a short pace, during the wheel ; as in the same description of wheel from line into column.

Q. 42.—The lieutenant, and covering-serjeant?

A.—If the column is left in front, the lieutenant will correct his distance from the rear rank ; if right in front, will change his flank ; during the wheel. The coverer will get to his place at the same time.

*Section IX.—A Company wheeling any given number of paces on either flank, from the Halt.*

(F. E., p. 62.)

Q. 1.—Will the preparatory caution for this movement be “AS A COMPANY IN LINE” or “IN COLUMN”?

A.—The movement being a practice for the battalion manoeuvres of a line wheeling into echelon on fixed pivots (*Sec. LXIV.*), and also of an open column forming line on a named company (*Sec. XXXIX.*), either caution may be given.

Q. 2.—What word is next given?

A.—“—PACES, RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL”, *or* “—PACES, ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT) BACKWARDS WHEEL”, according as the company is required to wheel forwards or backwards.

Q. 3.—Who will move at the word “WHEEL”?

A.—The covering-serjeant will place himself with his back to the 8th file from the pivot, in front of that file if the wheel is to be made forward, in rear of it if the wheel is to be backwards ; and, without any further command, will take the named number of paces and then halt : or, if the paces were taken to the rear, will halt and face about. The pivot man will face as the company will face when the wheel is completed ; his position being corrected by the captain, who will place himself on the pivot flank, facing inwards.

Q. 4.—What is meant by the pivot flank in this case?

A.—That flank on which the wheel is made, will, for the time being, be considered the pivot.

Q. 5.—Does the coverer take his paces *straight* to the front (or rear, as the case may be)?

A.—No; he will incline in a circular direction towards the pivot flank, so as to take the paces on the circumference of the circle of which the pivot man is the centre.

Q. 6.—Why are the paces measured from the *eighth* file from the pivot?

A.—Because that file wheeling 8 paces will complete the quarter circle; wheeling 4 paces, the eighth of a circle; wheeling 2 paces, the sixteenth of a circle. It is therefore the most convenient file from which to measure, and for the sake of uniformity of practice is always selected for that purpose.

Q. 7.—What command is next given?

A.—“*QUICK MARCH*”; on which the company wheels as directed in the caution.

Q. 8.—By whom, and when, is the company halted?

A.—By the captain; who, when the 8th file reaches the covering-serjeant, gives “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 9.—Does the captain then fall in at once?

A.—No: he will proceed carefully to dress the company, without moving either the 8th or the pivot file; and will then give “*Eyes front*” and fall in.

Q. 10.—Why is the precaution just mentioned, necessary?

A.—Because when the companies of a battalion wheel into echelon, extreme accuracy is required, in order that they may move correctly on their respective lines of direction.

Q. 11.—Where will the captain and coverer take post, when the former has given “*Eyes front*”?

A.—They will return to the places they occupied previous to the caution.

Q. 12.—When a battalion is in echelon of companies, how is each coverer posted?

A.—On the reverse flank of his company, aligned with the front rank.

Q. 13.—What is the rule with respect to wheeling a company backwards?

A.—Whenever the wheel is to be *more than the eighth of a circle*, the company will be faced about and wheeled rear rank in front.

Q. 14.—Instead, therefore, of the caution “ON THE — BACKWARDS WHEEL” the word would, in such a case, be “RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”?

A.—*Both* those words would be given : first the caution, then “RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.”

Q. 15.—Why?

A.—In order that the pivot man may face, and the coverer take his paces.

Q. 16.—Will the coverer, having taken his paces, remain facing to the rear?

A.—No; he will face about.

Q. 17.—What will the captain's word be in that case?

A.—He will necessarily give “*Halt, front, dress.*”

Q. 18.—Is there not a case in which the company, after being faced about, and wheeled up to the coverer rear rank in front, will *not* be ordered to “*front*”?

A.—Yes; if the drill instructor intends the company to act as one of the thrown-back companies of a battalion in line changing front by echelon on fixed pivots (*see* Sec. LXIV., Q. 45, 68), the captain's word will be “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 19.—Which will be the pivot man, and how will the coverer act, in that case?

A.—The proper rear-rank man of the pivot file will be the pivot man; and the coverer will take his paces to the proper rear *after* the company has faced about, and will *not* face about when he halts.

Q. 20.—Mention a case in which the company may, after facing about, have to wheel *back* to the coverer, and to remain rear rank in front?

A.—It would do so if supposed to be one of the thrown-back companies of an open column forming line on a rear company. (See Sec. XXXIX., Q. 49.)

Q. 21.—Which will be the pivot man in that case; and how will the covering-serjeant take his paces?

A.—The proper front-rank man of the pivot file; and the coverer will take his paces (*after* the company has faced about) to the proper front, and will then halt and face about.

Q. 22.—In each of those cases, when does the pivot man face in the required direction?

A.—On the caution ("FOUR PACES, &c.") given after the company has been faced about.

Q. 23.—In fact, then, the formation will, after the company has been faced about, proceed as if the company were standing front (instead of rear) rank in front?

A.—Yes; in every respect.

Q. 24.—In changing the front of a line at right angles to the old line, by echellon; and in forming line from column to the front, from the halt, by echellon; how many paces forward (or backward, as the case may be) will all the companies, except that of formation, be wheeled?

A.—Invariably four paces, *i.e.* the *eighth* of a circle.

---

*Section X.—Wheeling of the Company on its Centre.* (F. E., p. 63.)

Q. 1.—If the company is to wheel on its centre from the halt to either flank, what caution will be given by the drill instructor?

A.—"COMPANY, ON THE CENTRE, RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL."

Q. 2.—Which is the pivot man on whom the company performs each of those wheels?

A.—The man on the inner flank of the subdivision that wheels forward.

Q. 3.—Where does the covering-serjeant place himself on the word "WHEEL"?

A.—He moves out and aligns himself (with shouldered arms) with the pivot man, marking the spot where the outward flank of the subdivision that wheels forward will rest.

Q. 4.—How do the pivot man, and his rear-rank man act?

A.—The former faces into the named direction; the latter uncovers.

Q. 5.—Does the rear-rank man of the pivot file always uncover when a wheel is made forward from the halt?

A.—Invariably; whether that file is the pivot of a company, subdivision, or section.

Q. 6.—Where does the captain move to, on the word "WHEEL"?

A.—He places himself one pace in front of the subdivision that is to wheel forward; facing to the front.

Q. 7.—The wheel having to be made on the centre of the company, why does not the captain move in front of the centre?

A.—In order not to obscure the pivot man.

Q. 8.—To which flank do the men preserve the touch, and to which do they glance their eyes, during the wheel?

A.—They feel to the inner, and look to the outer, flank.

Q. 9.—In order to preserve a perfect line during the wheel, should not the subdivision which wheels forward be regulated by that which wheels backward?

A.—Yes: the outward man of the advancing subdivision will look inwards; and step in the same time, and with the same length of pace, as the outward man of the retiring subdivision.

Q. 10.—To which flank does the captain move during the wheel?

A.—To the flank marked by the covering-serjeant.

Q. 11.—From that flank, then, he will dress the company?

A.—When the company is dressed, it will be from that flank; but whether the company is dressed at all will depend on its supposed formation when the caution to wheel on its centre is given.

Q. 12.—Suppose the company is “AS IN COLUMN, RIGHT IN FRONT”?

A.—In that case, a wheel on its centre to the left would bring it into line. A company in column *left* in front, would in like manner, if wheeled on its centre to the *right*, wheel into line. In both cases, the company would be dressed, and the officers, &c., would take post as in line.

Q. 13.—A company (drilling singly) in *line*, then, if wheeled on its centre, would wheel into column?

A.—Yes; the column being right or left in front, according as the wheel was to the right or left; the officers, &c., taking post as in column, and the men dressing themselves.

Q. 14.—Is there not a case in which the covering-serjeant does *not* mark the outward flank of the subdivision that wheels forward?

A.—Yes; if the company is in *line*, and is ordered to wheel on its centre *a given number of paces*, the coverer will step those paces, as described in the last *Section*.

Q. 15.—What will the company be considered in such a case; and from which file will the paces be stepped?

A.—As the (central) company of formation of a battalion changing front by echelon, at an angle less than a right angle, on fixed pivots (*see* Section LXIV.): the coverer stepping his paces from the 8th file from the centre, counting towards the flank that wheels forward.

Q. 16.—By which flank will the captain dress the company; and how will he then take post?

A.—He will dress the company by the flank that wheels forward to the covering-serjeant, and having given “*Eyes front*”, will take post as in *line*; the supernumerary rank preserving its proper position and distance.

Q. 17.—When do the supernumeraries gain their places and distances, when a company wheels on its centre?

A.—As in the wheel, from the halt, into line or column as the case may be. (*See* Section VIII.)

Q. 18.—Should this movement ever be practised from the halt '*on the move*'?

A.—Yes. (*See* Sec. LXIV., Q. 57, 59.)

Q. 19.—What degree of wheel is intended by the caution "RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL" given to a halted company?

A.—A quarter-circle wheel. Unless, therefore, the word "WHEEL" is preceded by "— PACES" or "ON THE MOVE", the pivot man will face to his right (*or* left, as the case may be), and the covering-serjeant will run out to mark where the wheeling flank will rest.

Q. 20.—In what case will the subdivision that is to wheel back be faced to the right-about, previously to receiving the word "QUICK MARCH"?

A.—If that subdivision exceeds 12 files, it will invariably be faced about; the captain giving "*Halt, front, dress,*" at the completion of the wheel. (*See* Q. 9, p. 44.)

### *Section XI.—Wheeling Forward by Subdivisions or Sections from Line.*

(F. E., pp. 65, 69.)

Q. 1.—When the drill instructor gives the caution "BY SUBDIVISIONS (*or* SECTIONS) RIGHT WHEEL," to a halted company, where does the captain place himself?

A.—One pace in front of the centre of the right subdivision, or section.

Q. 2.—Why does he place himself in front of the right subdivision, or section?

A.—Because that is the subdivision or section which will become the leading one of the column.



Q. 3.—Is it a rule, then, that when a company is ordered to wheel by subdivisions, or sections, to the right or left from line, its leader places himself in front of that subdivision, or section, which is to become the leading one of the column?

A.—Yes: his post in column being on the pivot flank of that subdivision, or section.

Q. 4.—What other individuals move at the caution?

A.—The right-hand men of subdivisions, or sections; face to the right; and their rear-rank men uncover.

Q. 5.—What command is next given?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”: at which the subdivisions, or sections, step off and wheel into column.

Q. 6.—Where does the captain move to during the wheel?

A.—Turning to his subdivision (or section), to direct its wheel, he inclines to its left, which will become the pivot flank; giving the word “*Halt, dress,*” when the wheel into column is completed.

Q. 7.—By whom is the other subdivision, or each of the other sections, halted?

A.—The captain’s word “*Halt, dress*” applies to the whole company.

Q. 8.—Who will command the rear subdivision or sections?

A.—The lieutenant will command the rear subdivision; or, in column of sections, the 3rd section from the front. In column of sections, the ensign will command the 4th section from the front; and if there is no other officer present, the senior supernumerary serjeant will take the 2nd section from the front.

Q. 9.—On which flanks do subdivision and section leaders take post?

A.—On the proper pivot flanks, *i.e.* on the left when the column is right in front, and *vice versa*. (See Q. 19.)

Q. 10.—When do they place themselves on those flanks?

A.—At the captain’s word “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 11.—Where is the covering-serjeant's place in column of subdivisions or sections?

A.—One pace in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the leading subdivision, or section; and to that post he will move at the word "*Halt, dress.*"

Q. 12.—May he not occasionally have to take another place?

A.—Yes; if there is not a third supernumerary with the company to command the 2nd section from the front, that section will be led by the covering-serjeant, who will accordingly place himself on its pivot flank.

Q. 13.—When will the supernumerary rank correct its distance from the rear rank, and the rear-rank men of the pivot files regain their places?

A.—During the wheel.

Q. 14.—When the company is advancing in line, may it not form an open column of subdivisions, or sections, to either flank, by wheeling on moveable pivots?

A.—Yes; the instructor of the drill giving the word "BY SUBDIVISIONS (*or* SECTIONS), RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL"; and when the subdivisions, or sections, have wheeled square into column, the word "FORWARD." A company may also be wheeled into column of subdivisions, or sections, on moveable pivots from the halt: the word, in that case, being "ON THE MOVE, BY SUBDIVISIONS, &c." (*See* p. 27, Q. 5.)

Q. 15.—If the wheel into column is made on moveable pivots, when do the supernumeraries assume the command of their respective sections or subdivisions?

A.—When the sections, or subdivisions, having wheeled into column, receive the word "FORWARD."

Q. 16.—When, and how, do the captain and covering-serjeant move to their posts in the column?

A.—That depends on the flank to which the wheel into column is made.

Q. 17.—Suppose the wheel is to the right?

A.—In that case the captain marches at a short pace direct to his front, during the wheel of his subdivision or

section, so as to meet its pivot flank as the drill instructor gives the word "FORWARD": his covering-serjeant moving at the same time by the rear to his post in the column.

Q. 18.—If the company is ordered to wheel into column of subdivisions, or sections, to the *left*, how do the captain and coverer proceed?

A.—They remain, and wheel into column, with the right subdivision, or section, of the company; and at the word "FORWARD," proceed in double time—the coverer passing by the rear—to the pivot flank of the leading subdivision, or section, of the column.

Q. 19.—Which is the *proper pivot* flank of all single columns?

A.—That which, when wheeled up to, preserves the sections, subdivisions, or divisions of the line in their natural order, and to their proper front. (*See* p. 4, Q. 22.)

Q. 20.—What is the opposite flank termed?

A.—The *reverse* flank.

Q. 21.—To which flank do companies, subdivisions, and sections, cover and dress in column?

A.—At whatever distance the column may be formed, they cover and dress to the proper pivot flank.

Q. 22.—When the company is in column of subdivisions, where is the ensign posted?

A.—In rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank of the rear subdivision.

---

## Section XII.—*Wheeling Backward by Subdivisions, or Sections, from Line.*

(F. E., p. 67.)

Q. 1.—When it is intended that the subdivisions, or sections, should form an open column by wheeling *backward*, what will be the caution?

A.—“BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) BACKWARD WHEEL.”

Q. 2.—Where does the captain place himself on that caution?

A.—Precisely where he places himself if the subdivisions, or sections, are to wheel *forward* from the halt. (See Q. 3, of last Section.)

Q. 3.—Where does the covering-serjeant move to, on the caution?

A.—To that point at which the reverse or wheeling flank of the leading subdivision, or section, is to rest in column; which point he will mark, standing with shouldered arms.

Q. 4.—When does he take post in column?

A.—When the subdivisions, or sections, having completed the wheel, receive the command “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 5.—Does the captain move to his place in the column at the same time, and in the same manner, as when the subdivisions or sections wheel *forward* into column?

A.—Yes: and having given the command “*Halt, dress,*” (which the two subdivisions, or four sections, obey at the same instant), takes post on the pivot flank of the leading subdivision or section.

Q. 6.—When is the command of the rear subdivision, or of each of the rear sections, assumed by its leader?

A.—As when the wheel is made forward; i.e. at the captain's word “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 7.—Who, besides the captain and coverer, will move on the caution?

A.—The pivot men on whom the sections (or subdivisions) wheel back into column; who face to their *right* if the wheel is to be made on the *left*, and *vice versa*.

Q. 8.—Do not their rear-rank men uncover?

A.—No: see Section VIII., Q. 11.

#### 44 SUBDIVISIONS (OR SECTIONS) WHEELING INTO LINE.

Q. 9.—What is the rule with respect to wheeling back a strong subdivision?

A.—No subdivision which exceeds 12 files will ever be wheeled back (*i.e.* to the rear of the alignment it occupies) more than the *eighth* of a circle, without being first faced about.

---

#### *Section XIII.—An Open Column of Subdivisions, or Sections, wheeling into Line.*

(F. E., pp. 67, 69.)

Q. 1.—What is meant by an 'open' column of subdivisions or sections?

A.—The column is termed 'open' when the rear subdivision, or each of the rear sections, is at a distance equal to its own breadth from the one immediately in front of it.

Q. 2.—When the company, standing in open column of subdivisions, or sections, right or left in front, receives the caution "LEFT (*or* RIGHT) WHEEL INTO LINE," what individuals will move?

A.—The commanders and pivot men of sections or subdivisions; and the covering-serjeant.

Q. 3.—Where does the covering-serjeant move to, and how does he give his point?

A.—He moves to that point at which the outward or wheeling flank of the leading subdivision, or section, is to halt in line: standing with shouldered arms and his left arm raised.

Q. 4.—Where do the leaders of subdivisions, or sections, move to?

A.—The captain places himself one pace in front of the 2nd file from the pivot flank of the rear subdivision, or section, of the column; the other leaders fall back into the supernumerary rank.

Q. 5.—How do the pivot men act?

A.—They face to that which will become the front of the company in line; their rear-rank men uncovering as usual.

Q. 6.—When the word “QUICK MARCH” is given, where does the captain move to?

A.—Turning towards the men, that he may observe and direct the wheel, he moves round the pivot man; and two paces before the two subdivisions, or four sections, have completed the quarter-circle wheel, gives “*Halt, dress*”, and proceeds to dress the company.

Q. 7.—When does the covering-serjeant fall into his place in line?

A.—When the captain has given “*Eyes front*”; and (having, if the column was right in front, changed his flank) has fallen in on the right of the company.

Q. 8.—When a column of subdivisions, or sections, *left* in front, is wheeled from the halt into line, from which flank will the captain dress the company?

A.—From the right; the coverer marking its left flank.

Q. 9.—When will the pivot men drop their arms, and the supernumeraries get to their places in line?

A.—The former at the captain’s word, “*Eyes front*”; the latter during the wheel.

Q. 10.—If an open column of subdivisions, or sections, right in front, *on the march* is ordered to wheel into line, how will the captain and coverer get to their places?

A.—The captain will move straight on to his front at a short pace during the wheel, so as to meet the right of the subdivision or section he is leading, and to be in his place on the right of the company when “FORWARD” is given. The coverer at the same time, moves to his place, by the rear as usual.

Q. 11.—But if the column is *left* in front when ordered to wheel into line?

A.—In that case the captain will turn to the right—about on the command, and will move straight across to

the right of the company while the subdivisions or sections are wheeling into line. The coverer will, at the same time, move round the reverse flank (or flanks) of the rear subdivision (or sections) to his place in line.

Q. 12.—How will the other subdivision leader, or each of the other section leaders, act?

A.—Whether right or left is in front, he will fall back on the command; and will move, during the wheel, to his place in the supernumerary rank.

---

#### *Section XIV.—Marching on an Alignment in Open Column of Subdivisions or Sections.*

(F. E., p. 72.)

Q. 1.—What is meant by an alignment?

A.—The imaginary straight line lying between any two points, on which a line may be formed, or (as in the present instance) on which the pivot flanks of a column may be dressed.

Q. 2.—When the company in column of subdivisions, or sections, receives the caution to advance, what becomes the duty of its leader?

A.—To fix on some intermediate point between himself and the distant point which will be taken in prolongation of the pivot flanks of the column.

Q. 3.—Is not one point, then, a sufficient guide in marching?

A.—No: unless the leader of the column has two points in his front to march on, the correctness of the march cannot be depended upon. (See p. 12, Q. 4.)

Q. 4.—Who will be the leader of the column?

A.—He who commands its leading subdivision, or section; i.e. the captain.

Q. 5.—When marching in column, are the leaders of companies, subdivisions, or sections, to attend to the correct marching of the men?

A.—No: that duty devolves on the supernumerary rank.

Q. 6.—Have those leaders, then, nothing to do but to march onward with the men?

A.—They have a very important duty to perform during the march; viz. to give their whole attention to their covering and distance, which should at all times be accurately kept.

Q. 7.—In preserving the distance, what is it necessary they should remember?

A.—That it should be taken, not from the rear rank of the preceding company, subdivision, or section, but from the front rank.

Q. 8.—What term is usually applied to the distance between companies, subdivisions, or sections, in open column?

A.—*Wheeling distance.*

Q. 9.—When it is required to change the direction of an open column to the right or left, by each subdivision or section wheeling in succession on a moveable pivot, what caution is given, and by whom?

A.—“CHANGE DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT (*or LEFT*),” by the drill instructor.

Q. 10.—What becomes the duty of the commander of the leading subdivision, or section, when that caution is given?

A.—To give his section, or subdivision, the command “*Right wheel*,” or “*Left wheel*,” according to the direction to which the change is to be effected; and when it has wheeled into that direction, the word “*Forward*.”

Q. 11.—When, and by whose command, will the succeeding subdivision, or each of the succeeding sections, commence wheeling into the new direction?

A.—When it arrives at the point at which the leading one wheeled: by command of its own immediate leader.



Q. 12.—When a column is ordered to change direction, do company (subdivision, or section) leaders change their flanks?

A.—No: for the proper pivot flank of the column will remain unchanged.

---

*Section XV.—A Company in Open Column of Subdivisions, or Sections, forming to the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E., p. 73.)

Q. 1.—What cautionary word is given by the drill instructor, when the company marching in open column of subdivisions, or sections, is to form line to its *reverse* flank?

A.—“RIGHT (or LEFT) FORM COMPANY,” according as right or left is in front.

Q. 2.—To whom will that caution apply?

A. To the leaders of subdivisions or sections.

Q. 3.—Suppose the column is marching *right* in front, how will they act?

A.—They shift (by the rear, as usual) to the right flanks of their respective subdivisions or sections.

Q. 4.—What becomes the duty of the leader of the front subdivision, or section, immediately after changing his flank?

A.—To give his subdivision or section the word “*Right wheel.*”

Q. 5.—When it has wheeled the quarter circle, does he at once order it to halt?

A.—No: he gives it the word “*Forward*”; and when it has taken three paces to its new front, the word “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 6.—Why does he cause it to take three paces to its front before he gives “*Halt, dress*”?

A.—In order that the succeeding subdivision, or sections, may march clear of the supernumerary rank.

Q. 7.—What will then become the duty of the covering-serjeant?

A.—As soon as the leading subdivision or section is halted in line, he will run out to mark where the left of the company will rest; facing towards the pivot flank, and recovering his arms.

Q. 8.—How will the succeeding subdivision, or each of the succeeding sections, form up into line?

A.—By command of its leader; who, on reaching the outward flank of the subdivision (or section) which preceded him in column, will fall to the rear, and give the word "*Right wheel*"; giving "*Forward*" when his men have completed the quarter-circle wheel, and "*Halt, dress up*" when they are within one pace of the line.

Q. 9.—Will the rear subdivision (or each of the rear sections) be *dressed* by its own leader?

A.—No; the dressing will be done by the captain from the right of the company.

Q. 10.—Where, then, will the commander of the rear subdivision, or of each of the rear sections, place himself when he has given his word "*Halt, dress up*"?

A.—He will fall into his place in the supernumerary rank.

Q. 11.—When do the captain and coverer take post in line?

A.—When the former has dressed the whole company, and has given the word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 12.—How is line formed to the *left*, by a column of subdivisions (or sections) marching *left* in front?

A.—In the same manner as it is formed to the right when the right is in front: subdivision (or section) leaders changing, on the caution, to the *left* flanks, and giving "*Left wheel, &c.*"

Q. 13.—The captain, then, will dress the company from the left?

A.—Yes; changing his flank and falling in on the right, after giving "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 14.—Which flank of the company will the coverer mark; and when will he fall into his place into line?

A.—He will mark the right of the company; falling into his place, as usual, at the captain's word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 15.—Is there no case in which the column, before receiving the word "RIGHT (*or* LEFT) FORM COMPANY," may get a preliminary command?

A.—Yes; the effect of the word "RIGHT (*or* LEFT) FORM COMPANY" given to a column, being to form line at a right angle to the direction in which the men are marching, it is obvious that when it is required to form at any other angle, the column must first be ordered to *change direction.* (See Section XIV., Q. 9-12.)

Q. 16.—When, in that case, will the word "RIGHT (*or* LEFT) FORM COMPANY" be given?

A.—When the leading subdivision, or section, is at right angles to the future alignment.

[*The manner in which a company in column of subdivisions, or sections, forms to the pivot flank, is described in Section XIII.*]

---

### Section XVI.—*File Marching, and the Flank March by Fours.*

(F. E., pp. 42-45, 75.)

Q. 1.—In file marching, where do the captain and covering-serjeant march?

A.—The former next to the front-rank man of the leading file; the latter at the head of the front rank.

Q. 2.—Where do the supernumeraries march?

A.—The lieutenant in rear of the 2nd file from the

reverse flank of the company; the ensign in rear of the centre.

Q. 3.—When the company faces from the halt, then, or turns while on the march, to the reverse flank, the captain and covering-serjeant shift to that flank?

A.—Yes; in double time, the former by the *front*, the latter by the rear; the lieutenant, as usual, making a corresponding change in the rear.

Q. 4.—How are the officers and coverer placed, in a company taking ground to the pivot flank in *fours*?

A.—Precisely as stated in Answers 1 and 2: substituting the word “four” for “file.” (*See* p. 26, Q. 24, 25.)

Q. 5.—Does the same rule hold good when the company takes ground by fours to the *reverse* flank?

A.—Yes; in the drill of a single company.

Q. 6.—Does it not apply, then, in battalion?

A.—No; when a column takes ground by fours to the reverse flank, the captain (unless ordered to change his flank) remains in his place; and the lieutenant moves up on the reverse flank to lead the company. (*See* p. 26, Q. 26.)

Q. 7.—Do the captain and covering-serjeant return in the same manner to the pivot flank, when the company faces or turns to the front?

A.—No; they both return by the rear, the latter preceded by the former. (*See* p. 5, Q. 27.)

Q. 8.—What faults should the men be cautioned to avoid, in file marching?

A.—Stepping short, looking down, leaning backward, bending their knees too much, and losing distance.

Q. 9.—Is it necessary for the men to attend to their covering, while marching in file?

A.—Yes; as closely as to their dressing in line.

Q. 10.—How should the men be taught to cover?

A.—So accurately, that each man may only see the head of the man immediately in his front.

Q. 11.—Is file marching an essential part of the drill of a soldier?

A.—Yes; although in all field movements the flank march by fours has been substituted for file marching, the latter forms an important part of squad and company drill, and in its practice the strictest observance of all the rules of marching is particularly necessary.

Q. 12.—Is the double march applied to file marching?

A.—Never.

Q. 13.—What rule is to be observed in giving the word to soldiers to turn from line into file, and again from file into line?

A.—They will always be ordered to "TURN" to the right as the left foot, and to the left as the right foot, is coming to the ground. (*See* p. 18, Q. 59.)

Q. 14.—Suppose the word "TURN" is *not* given as the proper foot is coming to the ground?

A.—The men will move on one pace more, and then turn.

Q. 15.—Can men wheel while marching in file?

A.—Certainly: in either direction.

Q. 16.—To what points should attention be directed during the wheel?

A.—To preserving the cadence of march, and to the outer rank stepping rather longer (particularly with the outer foot) during the wheel.

Q. 17.—Suppose the company is directed to "HALT" or "MARK TIME" when only part of the files have wheeled in the named direction?

A.—The remainder will be taught to cover off in rear by the sidestep, if required.

Q. 18.—In what case will the rear files *not* be required to cover off, and why?

A.—If the word "FRONT" is to follow "HALT"; because the word "DRESS" will follow, and the men will then as a matter of course get into their places.

Q. 19.—Can a company taking ground to a flank by fours, wheel as when in file?

A.—Yes; by each four in succession wheeling round the same point.

[*For a company in fours closing, opening out, forming two-deep, &c. see Section VII., Q. 17—22.*]

### *Section XVII.—Forming Company, Subdivisions, or Sections, from File or Fours.*

(F. E., pp. 42, 74.)

Q. 1.—When the men are marching in file, what command is given in order to form company, subdivisions, or sections, to the front?

A.—“**FRONT FORM COMPANY (SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS).**”

Q. 2.—Where do the captain and covering-serjeant move at that command?

A.—The former, turning towards the men, moves across the front to meet the pivot flank of the company, or of the leading subdivision or section: the latter, passing at the same time by the rear, takes post in rear of the 2nd file from the pivot flank.

Q. 3.—How is the formation effected?

A.—The leading file of the company, or of each subdivision or section, marks time: the remainder, if right is leading, will turn to the left and wheel to the right; if left is leading, will turn to the right and wheel to the left.

Q. 4.—When the company or column is formed, does it move forward?

A.—No: it marks time until the command “**HALT, DRESS,**” or “**FORWARD,**” is given by the drill instructor.

Q. 5.—How do the supernumeraries act when *company* is formed?

A.—The lieutenant moves to his place during the formation; the supernumerary rank form with the company, correcting their distances, if necessary, when cleared by the rest of the company.

Q. 6.—If *subdivisions* or *sections* are formed, when will their respective leaders take post?

A.—When the command “HALT” or “FORWARD” is given.

Q. 7.—To which flank do the men look, and feel, while wheeling?

A.—They look to the outward flank, and feel inwards.

Q. 8.—Suppose either of the above formations are directed to be done “IN DOUBLE TIME”?

A.—In that case the leading file (or files), instead of marking time, will move on steadily in quick time; the remainder will make a half turn outwards, double up into their places, and take up the quick time as they arrive in line with the leading file of the company (or of each subdivision or section, as the case may be).

Q. 9.—How is a company marching in file (suppose *right* leading) formed to its reverse flank?

A.—The drill instructor gives “ON THE LEADING FILE, RIGHT FORM COMPANY”: on which the rear-rank man of the leading file turns to his right, takes two paces to the new front, and halts; and the remainder of the rear rank form, in succession, on his left. The front-rank men get into their places by wheeling round their respective rear-rank men and forming, successively, in front of them.

Q. 10.—How do the captain and covering-serjeant act during this formation?

A.—The coverer marks the outward flank of the company, facing towards the pivot flank, and recovering his arms; the captain dresses the men (from the pivot flank) file by file as they come up.

Q. 11.—When does the covering-serjeant take post?

A.—When the captain, having dressed the company, gives “*Eyes front*” and falls in.

Q. 12.—Do the men, as they come into line, glance their eyes to that flank on which the captain is placed?

A.—Yes: until the word "*Eyes front*" is given.

Q. 13.—How is company formed to the *right-about*?

A.—On the command "ON THE LEADING FILE, RIGHT-ABOUT FORM COMPANY," the rear-rank man of the leading file wheels to the right-about, then takes two paces to his new front, and halts. The remainder march on in file, wheeling to the right on the spot where the leading file wheeled, and forming to the right by successive files as already described. (*See Q. 9.*)

Q. 14.—Do the captain and covering-serjeant act as in the formation of company to the *right*?

A.—The captain does; but the coverer will place himself on the *inner* flank, and will face (with *shouldered arms*) to the new front.

Q. 15.—Why does the coverer act differently when company is formed to the *right-about* or *left-about*?

A.—Because when companies, in battalion, form to the right-about or left-about on their leading files, the coverers place themselves on the *inner* flank of their companies, in order to preserve the captains' places in line.

Q. 16.—On what occasion may companies in battalion be ordered to form in that manner?

A.—When a battalion in line has been ordered to pass from the proper right or left of companies by fours to the rear, and is required to re-form line to the proper front. (*See Section XXXV., Q. 6.*)

Q. 17.—How will the supernumerary rank proceed when company is formed to the reverse flank, or to the right- (or left-) about?

A.—Precisely as when company is formed to the front.

Q. 18.—How is a company marching in file, *left* leading, formed to the *left* or *left-about*?

A.—On the same principle that it forms to the right or right-about, when its right flank is leading.



Q. 19.—Are either of the above formations applicable when a company is moving in *fours* to a flank?

A.—All of them are applicable.

Q. 20.—How will the formation proceed?

A.—In forming to the front, the leading file will, on the command, mark time; and the remainder, *after* turning outwards, form two-deep: in forming to the reverse flank, or to the right-about or left-about, the whole form two-deep immediately on the command. The formation will then proceed as explained for a company marching in file.

Q. 21.—How will the captain, covering-serjeant, and supernumeraries act?

A.—Precisely as in the same formations from file-marching.

### Section XVIII.—*Countermarching by Files and Ranks.* (F. E., p. 77.)

Q. 1.—When a company is to countermarch by files or ranks, what should it be considered?

A.—As in column.

Q. 2.—What rule is to be observed in countermarching by *files* and *ranks*?

A.—That in the former, the men countermarch round the front rank: and that in the latter, they countermarch invariably to the *right*.

Q. 3.—When a column is to countermarch by files or ranks, what caution will it receive?

A.—“COUNTERMARCH BY FILES (*or* RANKS).”

Q. 4.—Who will move at that caution?

A.—The covering-serjeant will step up and cover the captain.

Q. 5.—If the company is to countermarch by *files*, how will the men be ordered to face?

A.—The drill instructor will order them to face *from* the present pivot flank, so that they may be marched *up to* the new pivot flank.

Q. 6.—Is the pivot flank of a column necessarily changed by the companies countermarching?

A.—Yes: the column, if right in front before, will be left in front after, the countermarch; and *vice versâ*.

Q. 7.—Suppose, then, the company is as in column right in front: what command will follow the caution to countermarch by *Files*?

A.—“TO THE RIGHT FACE.”

Q. 8.—How do the captain and covering-serjeant act at that word?

A.—The coverer faces to the right-about, and remains steady; the captain, having taken one pace outwards and faced inwards, will take one long side-pace in the direction in which the coverer is facing.

Q. 9.—How do the lieutenant and supernumerary rank proceed?

A.—On the word “FACE”, the lieutenant will move up and place himself one pace from the reverse flank of the front rank, facing inwards: the supernumerary rank will, at the same time, face towards the reverse flank.

Q. 10.—Do the supernumerary rank step off and countermarch with the company, at the word “MARCH”?

A.—Yes: the lieutenant, only, standing fast.

Q. 11.—Each halting and fronting as he gets to his place in the new rear?

A.—No; marking time till the company is halted and fronted, and *then* halting and fronting. The lieutenant takes post at the same time.

Q. 12.—Do the supernumerary rank observe that rule, whether the column countermarches by *files* or *ranks*?

A.—Yes: in both cases.

Q. 13.—What command is given when a column is to countermarch by *Ranks*?

A.—“RIGHT AND LEFT FACE,” preceded by the caution “COUNTERMARCH BY RANKS.”

Q. 14.—How do the ranks face at the command ?

A.—The front rank to the right ; the rear rank to the left.

Q. 15.—Does not that depend on whether the column is right or left in front ?

A.—No : whether right or left is in front, the front rank faces to the right, the rear rank to the left.

Q. 16.—What command is given when the company has faced, preparatory to countermarching by ranks or files ?

A.—“QUICK MARCH” if the company is to countermarch by *ranks* ; “LEFT (*or* RIGHT) COUNTERMARCH : QUICK MARCH,” if the countermarch is to be by *files*.

Q. 17.—How do the captain, lieutenant, and coverer, act in the countermarch by *Ranks* ?

A.—Precisely as in the countermarch by files.

Q. 18.—In each case :—When will the captain give his word “*Halt, front, dress*”, and the coverer fall into his place in rear of the 2nd file from the new pivot flank ?

A.—The captain will give that word when the leading file (if the countermarch is by files), or the front-rank pivot man (if the countermarch is by ranks), reaches the coverer, who will then fall back to his place.

Q. 19.—What precaution must be taken in both these countermarches ?

A.—That the files move up to the lieutenant as they wheel at the reverse flank : and that, while wheeling, they lengthen their pace with the outward foot, so as not to check the rest of the company.

Q. 20.—What will result from the neglect of that rule in the countermarch by files ?

A.—The files will become so much extended, that by the time the leading one reaches the covering-serjeant, when the command “*Halt, front, dress*” is necessarily given, little more than two-thirds of the men will have countermarched.

Q. 21.—May a company ever perform these countermarches in *double time*?

A.—No.

Q. 22.—Is countermarching applicable to a company in fours?

A.—Yes; *if the company, after countermarching, is to continue its march.*

Q. 23.—May a company in *line* be countermarched: and, if so, will it countermarch by files or by ranks?

A.—It may countermarch either by files or ranks; but should generally be ordered to countermarch by files.

Q. 24.—Why?

A.—Because when a company of a battalion in line countermarches on its own ground, it will do so by files.

Q. 25.—On what occasion will a company of a battalion in line be required so to countermarch?

A.—When column is formed from line on any named company, facing to the rear, that company will countermarch by files, on the caution. (*See* Sec. LV., Q. 32, 33.)

Q. 26.—What is the rule in battalion, with respect to companies in column countermarching?

A.—They will always countermarch by files; unless the column is at *close* distance, when they will necessarily countermarch by ranks.

### *Section XIX.—Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column Halted.*

(F. E., pp. 78, 81.)

Q. 1.—What will the company be considered in this movement, and why?

A.—Invariably as in column: this mode of diminishing front being inapplicable to a battalion formed in line.

Q. 2.—In diminishing, or increasing, the front of an open column halted, which subdivision (or sections) of each company will move?

A.—The *pivot* subdivision, or sections, will, in the former instance, double in rear of the *reverse*; in the latter, will move up to the front.

Q. 3.—What caution is given when a halted company is to diminish its front by forming subdivisions?

A.—“FORM SUBDIVISIONS.”

Q. 4.—Who gives that caution?

A.—The drill instructor.

Q. 5.—To whom does it apply?

A.—To the lieutenant, who falls back to mark the pivot flank of the subdivision that will be the rear one of the column.

Q. 6.—What command will follow, and by whom will it be given?

A.—Supposing right to be in front, the drill instructor will give “LEFT SUBDIVISION, RIGHT-ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE”: if left is in front, he will give “RIGHT SUBDIVISION, LEFT-ABOUT THREE-QUARTERS FACE.” (See Q. 15.)

Q. 7.—Suppose the company is as in column *right* in front:—the left subdivision will, of course, face as ordered; what other individuals of the company will move?

A.—The captain will take a pace to the front, and face inwards; and the rear-rank man of the left file of the right subdivision will fall back, and cover the *third* file from the left of his subdivision.

Q. 8.—Why does not the rear-rank man, when he uncovers, place himself, as usual, in rear of the file next him?

A.—Because there would not be sufficient room for the flank of the left subdivision to pass.

Q. 9.—When does he return to his place?

A.—When the left subdivision has passed.

Q. 10.—When do the captain and coverer move to their posts in column?

A.—While the left subdivision, which steps off at the word “**QUICK MARCH**,” is marching on its future leader.

Q. 11.—Who gives the left subdivision the words “*Halt, front, dress*”; and when?

A.—The lieutenant, when the left (or pivot) file of that subdivision reaches him.

Q. 12.—Do the supernumeraries of the left subdivision face about and march with it to the rear?

A.—Yes.

Q. 13.—How are sections formed from a halted column of subdivisions?

A.—In precisely the same manner as subdivisions are formed from a halted company; the future leaders of the pivot sections falling back, on the caution “**FORM SECTIONS**,” to those points at which their pivot flanks are to rest in column.

Q. 14.—Who will give the necessary word “*Halt, front, dress*” to the left section of each subdivision?

A.—Its own leader. (*See Section XI., Q. 8.*)

Q. 15.—May not the drill instructor direct the captain to give the word “*Left (or Right) Subdivision, Right- (or Left-) about three-quarters face*”?

A.—Yes; in which case the captain, before giving the word, will take a pace to the front, and face inwards.

Q. 16.—When the company in open column of subdivisions, right or left in front, receives the caution to “**FORM COMPANY**,” where does the covering-serjeant move to?

A.—To that point where the pivot flank of the rear subdivision will rest when company is formed.

Q. 17.—When does the supernumerary who led the rear subdivision, resume his post in rear of the 2nd file from the reverse flank of the company?

A.—When the caution “**FORM COMPANY**” is given.

Q. 18.—Does the rear-rank man of the pivot file of the leading subdivision, uncover at the caution?

A.—Yes: in precisely the same manner as when subdivisions are formed from company. (*See Q. 7.*)

Q. 19.—From whom will the rear subdivision get the word "*Halt, front, dress*"; and when?

A.—From the captain, when its pivot flank reaches the covering-serjeant.

Q. 20.—When do the covering-serjeant, and the rear-rank man who uncovered, take their proper places?

A.—At the captain's word "*Halt, front, dress*."

Q. 21.—How are subdivisions formed from sections?

A.—In the same manner that company is formed from subdivisions; the covering-serjeant and lieutenant proceeding, on the caution, to mark where the pivot flanks of the front and rear subdivisions respectively will rest.

Q. 22.—Will the captain give the necessary word to *both* the pivot sections, when they have moved up to the rear ranks of the other sections?

A.—No; that word will be given by the captain to the front, and by the lieutenant to the rear, pivot section.

Q. 23.—When do the leaders of the 2nd and 4th sections from the front, take their places in the super-numerary rank?

A.—On the caution "**FORM SUBDIVISIONS.**"

Q. 24.—When will the rear-rank men of the pivot files, who uncovered, take their proper places?

A.—When their respective subdivisions get the word "*Dress*."

---

### *Section XX.—Increasing and Diminishing the Front of an Open Column on the March.*

(F. E., pp. 80, 82.)

Q. 1.—In diminishing the flank of an open column *on the march*, does the rule that the *pivot* subdivision, or sections, shall double in rear, hold good?

A.—Yes.

Q. 2.—When a company marching to the front receives from the drill instructor the caution “FORM SUBDIVISIONS,” what will be the captain’s duty?

A.—To give the pivot subdivision the command “*Mark time*”; and when its reverse flank is clear of the subdivision which will be the leading one of the column, “*Right (or Left) half turn.*”

Q. 3.—Does that pivot subdivision continue to mark time until it receives the word “*Forward*”?

A.—No: the only commands it will receive are “*Left (or Right) Subdivision, Mark time:—Right (or Left) half turn,*” until it reaches its place in column, when it will get the word “*Front turn.*”

Q. 4.—Is it not a rule that when men are ordered to “MARK TIME,” they are not to advance till “FORWARD” is given?

A.—Yes: that is the rule, to which this case forms an exception; for the instant the pivot subdivision receives the command “*Right (or Left) half turn,*” it steps off.

Q. 5.—Who gives it the command “*Front turn*”?

A.—The lieutenant; who will move across, during the movement, to meet its pivot flank.

Q. 6.—When does he give it that word?

A.—When its pivot flank reaches him.

Q. 7.—Do the men of the pivot subdivision, in doubling in rear of the reverse one, lengthen the pace or quicken the time?

A.—No: they continue marching as they were marching when the caution to form subdivisions was given.

Q. 8.—When do the captain and coverer move to their places in column?

A.—While the pivot subdivision is inclining in rear of the other.

Q. 9.—How is company re-formed?

A.—The drill instructor gives the caution “FORM COMPANY”; and the captain turns inwards and gives



"*Left (or Right) Subdivision, Left (or Right) half turn*"; instantly adding the command "*Double*," and inclining outwards to the pivot flank of the company.

Q. 10.—When, and from whom, will the rear subdivision get the word "*Front turn*"?

A.—From the captain, when its reverse flank has cleared the pivot flank of the leading subdivision.

Q. 11.—What other word will the pivot subdivision receive from the captain?

A.—The word "*Quick*," when it arrives in line with the other subdivision.

Q. 12.—When will the captain take his place on the flank of the company, and the lieutenant fall into the supernumerary rank?

A.—The former, immediately after giving his word "*Quick*"; the latter, on the caution "*FORM COMPANY*."

Q. 13.—Do the instructions for increasing and diminishing by subdivisions, apply equally to sections?

A.—Yes.

Q. 14.—By whose command will the pivot sections (in diminishing) "*Mark time*" and "*Right (or Left) half turn*"?

A.—Those words will be given by the captain, and will apply to *both* the pivot sections; their own immediate leaders giving "*Front turn*."

Q. 15. If a column of subdivisions marching in *slow* time were required to form company, what difference would there be in the captain's words of command?

A.—After ordering the rear subdivision to *Left (or Right) half turn*," he would give "*Quick*"; and after giving "*Front turn*," would give "*Slow*."

---

*Section XXI.—The Company in Open Column of Subdivisions, Diminishing Front by breaking off Files.*

(F. E., p. 83.)

Q. 1.—From which flank should the files be ordered to break off?

A.—Invariably from the *pivot* flank.

Q. 2.—When files are to be broken off, what word is given; and by whom?

A.—The drill instructor gives the word "**BREAK OFF THREE (or more) FILES.**"

Q. 3.—Do the files break off at that word?

A.—No: it is only a caution to the commander of the leading subdivision, who instantly gives the word "*Three (or more) files on the left (or right), Right (or Left) turn: Left (or Right) wheel.*"

Q. 4.—Do the leaders of both subdivisions break off the ordered number of files at the same instant?

A.—No: the leader of the rear subdivision will not order the files to break off until he arrives at the spot where the leading subdivision contracted its front.

Q. 5.—When files are thus broken off, where do the covering-serjeant and captain place themselves?

A.—The former places himself on the pivot flank of the rear rank of the leading subdivision: the latter moves to the flank of the remainder of his front rank, as the files drop to the rear.

Q. 6.—To increase the front of the column, what command is given?

A.—"*Three (or more) files to the Front.*"

Q. 7.—By whom is that word given?

A.—By each subdivision leader: a caution being previously given by the drill instructor.

Q. 8.—Do the files move up to the front by breaking into *double* time?

A.—No: making a half turn to the pivot flank, they move up by lengthening their pace, not by quickening the time.

Q. 9.—Suppose the drill instructor wishes all the broken-off files to be brought to the front at once?

A.—He will give the word "FILES TO THE FRONT."

Q. 10.—Should all the files that are in rear not be ordered to the front, where do those files move to that are to continue in rear; and when does the coverer fall back?

A.—The files left in rear oblique to the right or left, so as to cover the outward files on the pivot flank: the coverer remains covering the captain till *all* the files are brought up.

Q. 11.—What precaution must be observed with the files that are broken off?

A.—They must be made to lock up well, so as not to interfere with men who may be in their rear.

Q. 12.—In what other way may a company in column, halted or on the march, diminish its front?

A.—By breaking into files or fours.

Q. 13.—From which flank will the advance, in all cases, be made?

A.—From the reverse flank.

Q. 14.—What will be the caution and command; suppose the company is on the march, and required to break into *fours*?

A.—"BREAK INTO FOURS FROM THE RIGHT (*or* LEFT). FOURS RIGHT (*or* LEFT): LEFT (*or* RIGHT) WHEEL."

Q. 15.—May a column of subdivisions (*or* sections) break into files or fours, in like manner, from the right or left of subdivisions (*or* sections)?

A.—Yes.

Q. 16.—How may column be re-formed?

A.—By the word "FRONT FORM COMPANY (SUBDIVISIONS, *or* SECTIONS)." See Section XVII., Q. 1—8.

*Section XXII.—Gaining Ground to a Flank by the Echelon March of Subdivisions or Sections.*

(F. E., p. 71.)

**Q. 1.**—When a company marching to its front is required to gain ground to a flank by the march of subdivisions (or sections) in echelon, what command does it receive?

**A.**—“**BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.**”

**Q. 2.**—At what degree of wheel will the word “**FORWARD**” be given?

**A.**—When the subdivisions (or sections) have completed the eighth of a circle.

**Q. 3.**—By which flank of the subdivisions or sections will the echelon march?

**A.**—By that on which the wheel into echelon was made.

**Q. 4.**—When ground, then, is being taken to the reverse flank, the captain will change to that flank?

**A.**—No; whether the company is wheeled into echelon from line or column, the captain will remain on his original flank.

**Q. 5.**—Does the lieutenant also retain his place?

**A.**—He will if the company is wheeled into echelon from *line*; but if the company is in column, and the wheel is made to the reverse flank, the lieutenant will move up on that flank, and lead the leading subdivision or section.

**Q. 6.**—Who, in that case, will lead the other subdivision, or each of the remaining sections?

**A.**—Its pivot man.

**Q. 7.**—When a company is wheeled from *line* into echelon of sections to the left, since all the officers retain their places, by whom will the sections be led?

A.—Each of the four sections will be led by its pivot man.

Q. 8.—Does the same rule apply to an echellon of *subdivisions* formed from line?

A.—Yes: if the wheel is to the left, each subdivision will be led by its pivot man.

Q. 9.—In an echellon of sections, how does each section leader in rear take his distance?

A.—From the pivot flank of the section next him in the direction towards which the company is inclining.

Q. 10.—What distance does he keep; that of his own section, or of the section on his pivot flank?

A.—That of the section on his pivot flank.

Q. 11.—To what must the attention of section leaders be also directed?

A.—To keeping their dressing in a line parallel to the original alignment.

Q. 12.—Suppose a *halted* company is required to wheel into echellon of subdivisions or sections, what command will be given by the drill instructor?

A.—“TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (*or* LEFT) IN ECHELLON.—ON THE MOVE, BY SUBDIVISIONS (*or* SECTIONS) RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH”: and when the eighth of a circle has been wheeled, “FORWARD.”

Q. 13.—Will the formation, then, always be on moveable pivots?

A.—Invariably: it is only an echellon of *companies* that is formed on standing pivots.

Q. 14.—How do the captain and supernumeraries act?

A.—Precisely as when the echellon is formed from a company on the march.

Q. 15.—When sufficient ground has been taken to the flank, what command is given in order to resume the original direction?

A.—“RE-FORM COMPANY”; by the drill instructor.

Q. 16.—How does the company form at that command?

A.—The subdivisions (or sections) wheel back, on the pivot flanks, into line.

Q. 17.—When the company is formed, does it advance without any other command?

A.—No: it marks time until it receives the command “FORWARD,” from the drill instructor.

Q. 18.—By which flank will the company advance at that word?

A.—By the right, if in line: by the proper pivot flank if in column.

Q. 19.—Do the subdivisions or sections invariably wheel back into line on the pivot flanks of the echelon?

A.—If they are not broken, and the ground is even, they may be wheeled *up* into line on the reverse flanks.

Q. 20.—What will be the command in that case?

A.—“BY SUBDIVISIONS (or SECTIONS), LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL.—FORWARD.”

---

### *Section XXIII.—To form Close Column of Sections, and Company Square.*

(F. E., p. 84)

Q. 1.—How will the company stand for this formation?

A.—With shouldered arms; and *Riflemen* will fix swords.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given by the drill instructor?

A.—“FORM CLOSE COLUMN OF SECTIONS”: on which the right section will face to the left and disengage to the front; and the 3rd and 4th sections will face to the right, and disengage to the rear.

Q. 3.—How will those sections, after facing, ‘disengage’ to the front and rear?

A.—The right section will disengage to the right by its leading file closing two paces in that direction, the rear-rank man inclining rather back; the 3rd and 4th sections will disengage to their right in like manner.

Q. 4.—Do any of the men in the 2nd section move?

A.—No; that being the section of formation, stands fast.

Q. 5.—At the word “MARCH” the 1st, 3rd, and 4th sections step off; by whom are they halted and fronted, as they get to their places in column?

A.—They halt and front without word of command?

Q. 6.—How do the captain and other section leaders, and the supernumeraries, take post in column?

A.—When the column is formed, the captain will take post on the left of the front rank of the front section; the other section leaders on the pivot flanks, and the remaining supernumeraries on the reverse flanks, of their respective sections. The covering-serjeant covers the captain.

Q. 7.—Does the drill instructor then give the caution to form square?

A.—No word “FORM SQUARE” is given: but at the command “PREPARE FOR CAVALRY” the men face outwards so as to show a front of equal strength in every direction; thus forming a company square.

Q. 8.—Do the men face outwards the moment that command is given?

A.—No; they allow time for the officers and non-commissioned officers to move into the centre of the column.

Q. 9.—What word is next given; and its effect?

A.—“READY”; at which the two front ranks all round the square will sink down on the right knees as a front and rear rank, placing the butts of their rifles on the ground against the inside of their right knees, locks uppermost, and muzzles slanting upwards so that the bayonets (or swords) will be about the height of a horse’s nose; the left

hand will grasp the rifle close above the lowest band, the right hand will hold the small of the butt; and the left arm will rest on the thigh, about six inches in rear of the left knee. The 3rd and 4th ranks bring their rifles to the 'ready' as a front and rear rank standing; the muzzles of the rifles inclined upwards. Kneeling ranks do not cock until required to fire.

Q. 10.—What is the difference between making ready 'as a front' and 'as a rear' rank, standing?

A.—In coming to the 'ready' as a *front* rank standing, a man carries the left foot ten inches to the left front, and presses the small of the butt of the rifle against his hip: as a *rear* rank standing, he carries his left foot six inches to the front, and presses the butt four inches above the hip.

Q. 11.—In a square the sides of which are less than four deep, how many ranks kneel; and why?

A.—The front rank only; in order that there may be two ranks to fire.

Q. 12.—Suppose it is required to fire, how will the standing and kneeling ranks respectively fire, and by whose command?

A.—The standing ranks will fire by files; the kneeling ranks (or rank) in volleys: by command of the captain, on a caution from the drill instructor. (For firing words, see Sec. XLVIII., Q. 3, 6.)

Q. 13.—What caution and commands will be given by the drill instructor, if he intends to move the square?

A.—"THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT or LEFT). INWARDS FACE. QUICK MARCH."

Q. 14.—What is meant by the command "INWARDS FACE"?

A.—That the men are to face in the direction in which the square is to move.

Q. 15.—When the square is halted, will the ranks receive a command to face outwards?

A.—No; at the word "HALT," the square will halt, and the men will then at once face outwards.



Q. 16.—How will the company be re-formed?

A.—The drill instructor will first give the word “RE-FORM COLUMN,” on which the men will face to their proper front in column, and touch into the pivot flanks; and the captain and supernumeraries will move out to their places on the flanks.

Q. 17.—How will the sections face at the following word “RE-FORM COMPANY”?

A.—The 1st section to the right; the 3rd and 4th to the left.

Q. 18.—On the word “MARCH” those three sections move out; by whom will No. 1 be ordered to turn to the rear, and Nos. 3 and 4 to the front?

A.—They will get into their places without word of command, as in the formation of the column.

Q. 19.—How will the men of those sections know when to make the turn that will bring them to their places?

A.—They should count the paces that take them into column; and will then have no difficulty in turning together at the right moment, in re-forming company.

Q. 20.—When do the captain, covering-serjeant, and supernumeraries take post in company?

A.—When the company is re-formed.

---

### *Section XXIV.—To form the Rallying Square.*

(F. E., p. 86.)

Q. 1.—When is this square used?

A.—In battalion light drill; when men of different companies mixed together in extended order, or detached skirmishers, are supposed to be overtaken by cavalry.

Q. 2.—When a company drilling singly is intended to form rallying square, how will the drill instructor proceed?

A.—He will cause the men to unfix bayonets, and to disperse; will place an officer (who will face the supposed

enemy, and hold up his sword) as a rallying point ; and will then give the word " FORM RALLYING SQUARE."

Q. 3.—On whom will the square be formed ?

A.—On the officer placed by the drill instructor.

Q. 4.—How do the men place themselves as they reach that officer ?

A.—The first two that reach him form on his right and left, facing outwards ; the next three place themselves in front of those posted, and three others in rear facing to the rear ; the next four that join, place themselves at the angles ; others, as they come up, complete the several faces ; and so on.

Q. 5.—When the men have all formed, what will become the duty of the officer in the centre of the square, should any of the front ranks of faces be incomplete ?

A.—To order the vacancies to be filled up from the rear.

Q. 6.—When do the men fix their bayonets (or swords) ?

A.—As they successively join the square.

Q. 7.—Do they then come to the ' shoulder ' ?

A.—No ; to the ' order.'

Q. 8.—If the square is to move, what caution and command will be given by the drill instructor ?

A.—The same as those given to a company square.  
*See Q. 13. of last Section.*

Q. 9.—Considering the manner in which the square was formed, will either of its faces be sufficiently dressed to move with the requisite regularity ?

A.—No ; and the drill instructor will therefore cause the leading face to be dressed before he puts the square in motion.

Q. 10.—When the square is halted, do the men face outwards without word of command, as in the case of a company square ?

A.—Yes.

Q. 11.—Do they then assume the position of defence against cavalry?

A.—No; not until the word “READY” is given.

Q. 12.—How do the men, at that word, prepare for cavalry; and how, and by whose command, will they fire?

A.—They will prepare for cavalry, and fire, as described in the last *Section* (Q. 9-12.): the firing words being given by the officer on whom the square is formed.

Q. 13.—When the company is to be re-formed, what caution is given, and by whom?

A.—“REDUCE THE SQUARE”; by the drill instructor.

Q. 14.—Who should move at that caution?

A.—The covering-serjeant; who will mark the pivot flank of the company, facing the supposed enemy.

Q. 15.—What command is next given?

A.—“*Re-form Company*,” by the officer in the centre of the square; on which the men will form on the covering-serjeant.

Q. 16.—What rule will be observed by the men when the drill instructor places *two* (or more) rallying points?

A.—Every man will run to the rallying point nearest him.

Q. 17.—How will the squares, in that case, be re-formed?

A.—The officer on whom each square is formed will give “*Re-form Subdivision* (or *Section*)”: the pivot flank being then marked by the senior non-commissioned officer.

---

Q. 18.—By what word is a company dismissed off parade?

A.—“TO THE RIGHT FACE.—LODGE ARMS.”

Q. 19.—Suppose the men are at the ‘order’?

A.—In that case, before being faced to the right, they will be ordered to shoulder.

Q. 20.—How do the men proceed at the word, “**LODGE ARMS**”?

A.—They come to the ‘port’; the front rank at the same time taking a side-pace to the left, the rear rank a side-pace to the right. After a pause the men will break off, and quietly leave the parade.

Q. 21.—How does the supernumerary rank proceed?

A.—Precisely as the rear rank.

Q. 22.—When men parade with side-arms only, how will they be dismissed?

A.—By the word “**TO THE RIGHT FACE.—BREAK OFF.**”

### *Section XXV.—Formation of the Battalion on Parade.* (F. E., p. 96.)

Q. 1.—How does a battalion, as a general rule, assemble on parade?

A.—In open column of companies, right in front.

Q. 2.—When are the companies told off and proved?

A.—On their private parades, before they are marched into column.

Q. 3.—How is the position which each company is to take in the column, marked?

A.—The covering-serjeants, under the adjutant’s superintendence, will mark the spot where the pivot flank of their respective companies will rest; taking wheeling distance.

Q. 4.—Who, then, will march at the head of each company, when it moves from its private parade into column?

A.—Its senior supernumerary serjeant.

Q. 5.—Will the position of the companies in the column be always the same?

A.—No; their order will frequently be changed, so that each in turn may lead the column.

Q. 6.—As each company gets to its place in column, will it be dressed as well as halted and fronted?

A.—Yes; when companies are first marched into column they will be dressed and get the word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 7.—Does the captain then give any other command?

A.—He gives "*Order arms—Stand at ease.*"

Q. 8.—How do the captain and supernumeraries of each company take post?

A.—As in a single company 'as in column, right in front.' (See Section I., Q. 20.)

Q. 9.—Which are the places of the adjutant and majors, in column?

A.—The senior major will take post two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the right wing; the junior major, two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the left wing; the adjutant, two paces from the reverse flank of the right-centre company if right is in front, of the left-centre company if left is in front.

Q. 10.—Would both the majors take the places above mentioned, if the column were ordered to *advance* or *retire*?

A.—No; in that case the major of the leading wing would place himself in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd company from the front, in order to superintend the direction of the column during the advance or retreat.

Q. 11.—Placing himself in rear of the captain leading the 2nd company?

A.—No; in rear of the pivot file, so as not to interfere with the captain of the 3rd company.

Q. 12.—Suppose there is only one major present, who will have to act as second major?

A.—The senior captain should be mounted, and perform that duty; or, if that is impracticable, the adjutant will act as junior major.

Q. 13.—If it happens that there is only one mounted officer present (besides the commanding officer)?

A.—He must be prepared to dress the coverers and pivots from either flank.

Q. 14.—What are the mounted officers' duties besides dressing the coverers and pivots?

A.—To take up ground; correct mistakes; and, generally, to assist the commanding officer during manœuvres.

Q. 15.—When do the mounted officers take up their proper places in line or column?

A.—When each movement is executed: or, if not engaged in dressing points, during the movement.

Q. 16.—What is the usual place of the commanding officer, in open column?

A.—On the pivot flank of the leading company.

Q. 17.—By whom are the colours carried, and how is the colour party formed?

A.—Each colour is carried by an officer; the Queen's colour being on the right, the regimental colour on the left, with a serjeant between them: the rear-rank of the colour party is composed of two non-commissioned officers or steady men, with a serjeant between them.

Q. 18.—What term is applied to the serjeant between the colours, and the serjeant in the centre of the rear rank of the colour party?

A.—They are called the front-rank and rear-rank '*centre serjeants*': being in the centre of the battalion when it is formed in line.

Q. 19.—How is the colour party posted in column?

A.—In rear of the right-centre company if the column is right in front; in rear of the left-centre company if left is in front; at one pace distance from the rear-rank. They cover the 3rd, 4th, and 5th files from the pivot flank of the company of which they are in rear.

Q. 20.—Is the colour party always formed in two ranks, when in column?

A.—Yes; except in one instance, *viz*, when the column is at close distance. The colour party will, in that case, be between the two centre companies, but (necessarily) formed in *single* rank.

Q. 21.—How will that single rank be arranged; and when will the ordinary formation be resumed?

A.—Two of the rear-rank serjeants will form on the right of the Queen's colour, the third will be on the left of the other colour. The ordinary formation of the colour party will be resumed when the column opens out.

Q. 22.—Where are the band, drummers, and pioneers posted when a battalion forms singly on parade?

A.—The band and drums will be placed in several ranks, twelve paces in front of the leading company; the pioneers, formed two-deep and led by a corporal, six paces in front of the band.

Q. 23.—Which will be the places of the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers when the battalion is manœuvring?

A.—They will join their companies, taking post in the supernumerary rank.

Q. 24.—How will the battalion thus formed in column be told off?

A.—Into 'right' and 'left' companies, and by wings.

Q. 25.—What word will be given by the battalion commander; and to whom will it apply?

A.—"TELL OFF THE BATTALION"; on which each captain will take a pace to his front, and will face inwards. The captain of the leading company will then call out "*Number 1, right company*"; the captain of No. 2, "*Number 2, left company*"; the captain of No. 3, "*Number 3, right company*"; and so on to the rear of the column.

Q. 26.—Odd numbers, then, are termed 'right', and even numbers 'left', companies?

A.—Yes; like the odd and even files in a company.

Q. 27.—When do the captains resume their places on the flanks?

A.—When the battalion commander, after naming the companies which are to form the right and left wings, gives “EYES FRONT.”

Q. 28.—When companies in column are to be inspected, what word will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“REAR RANKS TAKE OPEN ORDER.—MARCH.”

Q. 29.—How will the company officers and covering-serjeants proceed?

A.—The captain, coverer, and supernumeraries of each company will act precisely as explained in *Section III.*, for a company in *line* taking open order; the companies being considered, for the time being, independent companies. The supernumerary rank, at the word “MARCH”, will step back *four* paces.

Q. 30.—What word will then be given; and by whom?

A.—“LEADING COMPANY, STAND FAST. REMAINING COMPANIES, ORDER ARMS—STAND AT EASE”; by the battalion commander.

Q. 31.—How does each captain act, as the inspecting officer approaches him?

A.—He receives him with a salute; having first called his men to *attention*, and directed them to shoulder arms.

Q. 32.—Are the men to present arms?

A.—No.

Q. 33.—Does the captain accompany the inspecting officer through the ranks?

A.—Yes; in order to answer any questions that may be put to him respecting the company.

Q. 34.—The inspection of the company being finished, what will be the captain's duty?

A.—To close the ranks, and direct the men to order arms and stand at ease.

Q. 35.—Do the officers and coverer then take post as with a company in line?

A.—No; the company, when its inspection is finished, is no longer considered as an independent company; and



the captain, coverer, and supernumeraries will take their proper places in column.

Q. 36.—What relation have battalion movements to the manœuvres of a brigade?

A. The same that the formations of a single company bear to the evolutions of a battalion; the drill of the smaller body being, in each case, a preparation for that of the larger.

Q. 37.—When the battalion is formed for exercise, are the companies generally equalized?

A.—Yes: but it should also be frequently practised in companies of unequal strength.

Q. 38.—When a battalion is formed in open column with others, how are the band, drummers, and pioneers drawn up?

A.—The band and drums, two paces from the reverse flank of the centre of the battalion; the pioneers, two paces from the reverse flank of the leading company.

---

### *Section XXVI.—When the Open Column wheels into Line.*

(F. E., pp. 99, 103.)

Q. 1.—How are the companies drawn up when a battalion is formed in line?

A.—Without any interval between them, except the space required for the colour party between the two centre companies.

Q. 2.—How may the battalion thus formed be told off?

A.—It may, if necessary, be told off from right to left, in the same manner as it is told off in column from front to rear; but the captains, when numbering their companies, will remain in their places.

Q. 3.—How is each company arranged?

A.—As described in *Section I.*, for a company 'as in line': except the company on the left of the line, which will have its senior subaltern officer (covered by a supernumerary serjeant) on its left flank.

Q. 4.—Which will be the commanding officer's place, when the battalion is in line?

A.—If the battalion is drilling singly, he may occasionally be in front; but he should accustom the men to get his words of command from the rear, as would be the case in brigade.

Q. 5.—Where are the other mounted officers posted?

A.—The first major is six paces in rear of the centre of the right wing: the second major six paces in rear of the centre of the left wing. The adjutant is six paces in rear of the colours.

Q. 6.—Where are the colours stationed?

A.—Between the two centre companies, arranged as described in the last *Section*.

Q. 7.—What is the principal duty of the centre serjeants?

A.—To direct the line when advancing or retiring. (*See Section XXXI.*)

Q. 8.—Where are the band, drummers, and pioneers posted, when the battalion is formed in line?

A.—The band, formed in two ranks, and at loose files, is in rear of the centre of the line, nine paces from the supernumerary rank; the drummers, fifers, and buglers are in two divisions, nine paces in rear of the supernumerary rank of the 2nd companies from the right and left; and the pioneers, formed two-deep, are in rear of the centre of the right flank company, nine paces from the supernumerary rank.

Q. 9.—Where are the staff officers and staff serjeants posted?

A.—The former, three paces in rear of the band; the latter, in rear of the centre of the battalion, in line with the supernumerary rank.

Q. 10.—Before manœuvring commences, where will the drummers, fifers, buglers, and pioneers be ordered to take post?

A.—With their respective companies.

Q. 11.—If the battalion is drawn up in line *to be reviewed* singly, where will the drummers, &c., and the staff officers take post?

A.—The divisions of drummers will be formed two-deep on each flank of the line; the pioneers will form two-deep on the right of the drummers who are on that flank; and the staff officers will form on the right of the whole.

Q. 12.—When an open column right in front, formed as described in the last *Section*, is to wheel into line, what caution is given?

A.—“LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.”

Q. 13.—To whom does that caution apply?

A.—To the captains, covering-serjeants, and pivot men of companies: to the band, drummers, and pioneers; and to the junior major.

Q. 14.—How do those individuals proceed?

A.—The captain and pivot man of each company proceed as directed in *Section VIII.* (Q. 28.): the covering-serjeant of each (except the leading) company places himself on its right, aligned with the front rank: the band, drummers, and pioneers face towards the centre of the line: and the junior major superintends the dressing of the pivots from the rear of the column.

Q. 15.—Why does the covering-serjeant of each (except the leading) company place himself on its right?

A.—In order to preserve his captain's place in line.

Q. 16.—Would he place himself on that flank, on the caution, if the column were *left* in front?

A.—No; he would in that case remain steady till the next word was given, and his company commenced wheeling, and would *then* move up on the right flank.

Q. 17.—Where does the covering-serjeant of the leading company place himself?

A.—He moves out in double time: and, facing the future front, and dressing in the line of pivots, marks the ground on which the right of his company is to rest in line. (*See* Section VIII., Q. 28, 29.)

Q. 18.—When the pivot men have faced to their left, how will they act?

A.—Each will look to the left for his dressing: and raise the right arm from the elbow, keeping it in that position until the company that has wheeled up to him gets the word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 19.—Who will superintend their dressing?

A.—The junior major (*see* Q. 14.), who will give the word "STEADY" when they are in line.

Q. 20.—What command is next given?

A.—"QUICK MARCH."

Q. 21.—What is done at that command?

A.—The companies wheel into line (*see* Section VIII., Q. 31—38); and the mounted officers, band, drummers, and pioneers move to their respective posts in line.

Q. 22.—Who will halt each company, and when?

A.—Its captain, when the outer wheeling man is two paces from the flank of the company next in line.

Q. 23.—How do the colours get to their place in line; and by whom will they be dressed?

A.—They wheel up between the two centre companies; and the captain of the company that wheels up to the centre will dress them with his own men.

Q. 24.—When do the covering-serjeants take post on the right of the rear ranks of their companies?

A.—When their captains, having dressed their companies, give the word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 25.—If a column *on the march* is ordered to wheel into line, how will the officers and covering-serjeant of each company proceed?

A.—As described in *Section VIII.*, Q. 41, 42.

*Section XXVII.—When the Battalion in Line takes Open Order.*

(F. E., p. 104.)

Q. 1.—When the line is to take open order, what caution will be given?

A.—“**REAR RANK TAKE OPEN ORDER.**”

Q. 2.—What individuals of the line are to move at that caution?

A.—The officers, covering-serjeant, and rear-rank right-hand man of each company; the serjeant-major; the rear-rank man on the left of the line; and the majors and adjutant.

Q. 3.—How do the officers and coverer of each company proceed?

A.—As explained in *Section III.*, Q. 5—9.

Q. 4.—How do the rear-rank right-hand men of companies, and the rear-rank man on the left of the line, act?

A.—They take two paces to the rear: face to their right; and cover under the superintendence of the serjeant-major, who moves to the right of the line at the caution.

Q. 5.—The mounted officers?

A.—The senior major will move up to the right of the front rank; the second major and adjutant to its left.

Q. 6.—What command is next given?

A.—“**MARCH.**”

Q. 7.—Who will move at that word?

A.—All the officers, and the rear and supernumerary ranks of the whole line.

Q. 8.—Will not the band, drummers, and pioneers, also advance to the front?

A.—No: they remain as posted at close order.

Q. 9.—How will the officers, &c., of each company proceed?

A.—Precisely as explained in the *Section (III.)* above

referred to: except that the supernumerary serjeant on the right of the rear rank of each company will only dress *that* rank; and that the captains will not dress their subalterns after moving out to the front of the line.

Q. 10.—Where do the mounted and staff officers, and the colours, move to?

A.—The officers carrying the colours take three paces to their front, and dress with the line of officers; the first major places himself on the right of the line of officers, and the second major on its left; the adjutant remains on the left of the front rank; the staff officers place themselves on the right of the front rank, at one pace distance. The lieutenant-colonel will place himself six, the colonel (if present) ten paces, in front of the colours.

Q. 11.—By whom will the supernumerary rank when it has stepped back, and the company officers when they have moved out, be dressed?

A.—The serjeant-major will dress the whole of the supernumerary rank, and will give "*Eyes front*"; the senior major will dress the officers and give "*STEADY*."

Q. 12.—How do the officers act at the word "*STEADY*"?

A.—They port their swords, and look to their front.

Q. 13.—When does the right-hand man of the rear rank of each company drop his right arm?

A.—When the word "*Eyes front*" is given by the supernumerary serjeant who has dressed that rank.

Q. 14.—By whom are the intervals left by the officers who carry the colours, filled up?

A.—By the serjeants by whom those officers are covered at close order.

Q. 15.—When the serjeant-major has dressed the supernumerary rank, where does he fall in?

A.—On the right of the staff serjeants.

Q. 16.—Are the same arrangements made, whether the battalion is drawn up in line to be reviewed *singly* or as one of *a brigade*?

A.—The only difference is, that in the former case, the drummers, pioneers, and staff officers are posted as directed in the A. to Q. 11; in the latter, as directed in the A. to Q. 8.; of the last *Section*. See pp. 81, 82.

Q. 17.—When a battalion is drawn up in line at open order, to receive a reviewing officer, what caution will be given as he approaches?

A.—The battalion commander will give the caution "GENERAL SALUTE"; followed by the command "PRESENT ARMS."

Q. 18.—How do the officers salute when the men present arms?

A.—At the 2nd motion of the 'present' they recover swords; and at the 3rd motion, lower them to the right, the point in the direction of the right foot; at the same time raising the left arm as high as the shoulder, and bringing the hand, knuckles uppermost and fingers extended, to the peak of the shako.

Q. 19.—What other compliments will be paid to the reviewing officer?

A.—The band will play, the drums beat, and the colours be allowed to fly.

Q. 20.—On what occasion are the colours *dropped*?

A.—When the caution is "ROYAL SALUTE."

Q. 21.—How do the officers act when the men are directed to "SHOULDER ARMS"?

A.—They recover swords at the 1st motion of the 'shoulder', and port at the 2nd motion. •

Q. 22.—How will the men stand when the reviewing officer is riding down the line?

A.—With carried arms.

Q. 23.—Will the colours be allowed to fly; or be dropped when the reviewing officer passes?

A.—No.

---

*Section XXVIII.—When the Battalion resumes  
Close Order.*

(F. E., p. 105.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when the line is to resume close order?

A.—“REAR RANK TAKE CLOSE ORDER.”

Q. 2.—Whom does that word cause to move?

A.—The officers of each company face to the right and recover swords (*see* p. 9, Q. 20); the officers carrying the colours face with the rest; the staff, drummers, and pioneers—if on the flanks—face inwards; and the mounted officers turn their horses' heads to the right.

Q. 3.—What command is next given?

A.—“MARCH”; at which the rear and supernumerary ranks, and the officers and covering-serjeant of each company, act as in *Section III.*; and the mounted officers (and the staff, drummers, and pioneers, if on the flanks) move to their respective posts at close order.

---

*Section XXIX.—When the Line breaks into  
Open Column Right in front.*

(F. E., p. 135.)

Q. 1.—How will the battalion in line wheel back into open column right in front, from the halt?

A.—The wheel being a quarter-circle wheel, the companies will face about, and then wheel rear rank in front.

Q. 2.—What caution is given, and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“OPEN COLUMN RIGHT IN FRONT”; on which the captain and pivot man of each company, and the covering-serjeant of the right-flank company, will proceed as explained in *Section VIII.* (Q. 7-11); the senior major



moves up to the right of the line; and the officer and serjeant on the left of the line fall back into the supernumerary rank.

Q. 3.—What command will next be given?

A.—“RIGHT-ABOUT FACE.”

Q. 4.—At which word, the whole will face about?

A.—No; the pivot man of each company, the coverer of the right-flank company, and the senior major, will, of course, stand fast; and the colour party will face to the right, and disengage to the rear. The remainder (including band, drummers, and pioneers) will face about; the junior major and adjutant turning their horses' heads to the rear.

Q. 5.—How does the formation proceed at the word “RIGHT WHEEL: QUICK MARCH”?

A.—Each company will proceed as explained in *Section VIII.* (Q. 13-18.). The colour party will wheel in file to the right, and will be halted and fronted in its proper place in rear of the right-centre company; and the band, drummers, pioneers, and mounted officers (except the senior major) will move to their places in column. See pp. 76, 77.

Q. 6.—When will the senior major take post in column?

A.—After he has corrected the covering of the captains from the head of the column.

Q. 7.—Where do the coverers of all the companies except No. 1., march during the wheel; and when do they take their places in column?

A.—During the wheel, they march on the proper right of the proper rear rank of their companies; and at their captains' word “*Halt, front, dress*”, move to their places in column.

Q. 8.—When does the covering-serjeant of No. 1. company take post in column?

A.—When his company, having completed its wheel, gets the word “*Halt, front, dress.*”

Q. 9.—How is an open column *left* in front formed from line?

A.—Exactly on the same principle as when right is to be in front; the companies, after being faced about, will wheel to the left, and the junior major will correct the captains' covering from that flank.

Q. 10.—Does the covering-serjeant of each (except the future leading) company, wheel into column on its left?

A.—No; he remains on its right.

Q. 11.—Suppose a halted line is required to break into column of *subdivisions* or *sections*, what caution will be given, and how will the captain and pivot man of each company proceed?

A.—The caution will be "BY SUBDIVISIONS (*or* SECTIONS), ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT) BACKWARD WHEEL"; and the captains and pivot files will act precisely as explained in *Section XII*.

Q. 12.—How will the covering-serjeants, colour party, band, drummers, and pioneers act on the caution?

A.—The coverer of the company that will be the front company of the column will act as in the *Section (XII.)* above referred to; the remaining coverers will stand fast. The band, drummers, and pioneers will face to the right-about; and the colours will face to the right if right is to be in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 13.—Who will dress the pivots, and the subdivision (or section) leaders?

A.—The senior or junior major, according as the column is to be formed right or left in front.

Q. 14.—How will the mounted officers, colours, and band move to their places?

A.—Precisely as in the formation of a column of companies.

Q. 15.—What rule is to be observed when the subdivisions or sections exceed *twelve* files?

A.—They will be faced about, and wheeled rear rank in front (*see* p. 44, Q. 9): the formation proceeding as in the wheel into column by *companies*.

Q. 16.—When a battalion advancing or retiring in line, is wheeled forward into column of companies, subdivisions, or sections, how does each company proceed?

A.—Precisely as explained in *Sections VIII. and XI.* (pp. 27, 39.)

Q. 17.—How does the colour party act?

A.—It wheels independently; and moves, by the shortest line, to its place in column.

Q. 18.—May a battalion be wheeled from line into column “on moveable pivots from the halt”?

A.—Yes; the caution commencing with “ON THE MOVE.” (See p. 28, Q. 6.)

---

### *Section XXX.—Marching past in Slow and Quick Time.*

(F. E., p. 294.)

Q. 1.—What preparations are made, previously to the column being put in motion?

A.—Points are placed by the adjutant, to mark the angles of the square (or oblong) round which the column is to march.

Q. 2.—What other point will be necessary?

A.—The camp colour at which the reviewing officer will place himself to see the companies march past.

Q. 3.—Where are the wheeling points placed?

A.—One at about a company's wheeling distance in front of the column, and one at 2 or 3 paces in rear of the column, both covered in a line clear of the captain's left arms; the two other points will mark the flanks of the saluting base, and will be covered in a line 4 paces from the camp colour at which the reviewing officer takes his station.

Q. 4.—Do the captains remain on the left (or proper

pivot) flank of their companies, while the column marches round the square?

A.—No: they change to the right of their companies during the 2nd wheel. (*See* Q. 7.)

Q. 5.—By whom is the column put in motion?

A.—By the battalion commander, who will give “SLOPE ARMS.—MARCH PAST IN SLOW TIME. SLOW MARCH.”

Q. 6.—What word will be given by each captain in succession, as he reaches the 1st point?

A.—“*Left wheel*”; and, when his company has wheeled square, “*Forward*.”

Q. 7.—Will he act in like manner when his company is to make its 2nd wheel?

A.—No; he will give his word “*Left wheel*” at wheeling distance *from*, so as to wheel *up to*, the 2nd point; will change his flank by moving straight to his front at a short pace during the wheel, placing himself on the right of the company as he gives the word “*Forward: by the right*”; and will lead steadily on the 3rd point.

Q. 8.—Will he not order his men to carry arms?

A.—No; they will carry arms at the word “*Forward*.”

Q. 9.—What will become the duty of each captain, when he arrives within 30 paces of the reviewing officer?

A.—To give his company the word “*Rear rank take open order*”; at the same time moving out to the front. (*See* Section III., Q. 30.)

Q. 10.—How do the supernumeraries, coverer, and rear-rank man of each company proceed, as it takes open order?

A.—Precisely as in the *Section* (III.) above referred to.

Q. 11.—When do the officers of each company commence the *salute*?

A.—When they arrive within 10 paces of the reviewing officer; taking the time from the captain, who will, two paces previously, have raised the fingers of his left hand as a signal.

Q. 12.—What time is occupied in performing the *salute*?

A.—That occupied in taking six paces in slow time; the officers commencing it as the left foot is placed on the ground.

Q. 13.—When do they commence bringing their swords to the 'recover' and 'port'?

A.—As the left foot comes to the ground six paces after passing the reviewing officer; performing those motions while taking two paces.

Q. 14.—When each company is 20 paces past the general, what command will be given by its captain?

A.—"*Rear rank take close order*"; on which every individual of the company will proceed as directed in *Section III.*, Q. 37-39.

Q. 15.—When, and by whose command, does each company perform its 3rd wheel?

A.—On arriving at the 3rd point, the captain will give the word "*Left wheel*"; and when the company has wheeled square, "*Forward: by the left.*"

Q. 16.—When, and how, do the captain and coverer of each company resume their posts on the proper pivot flank?

A.—While the company is performing its 3rd wheel; passing, as usual, by the rear.

Q. 17.—What word will each captain in succession give, as he arrives at the 4th point?

A.—"*Left wheel*": and when square, "*Forward.*"

Q. 18.—Where do the serjeant-major and other staff serjeants march?

A.—In rear of the colour party, with swords drawn.

Q. 19.—When does the band commence playing?

A.—When the leading company, having completed its 2nd wheel, receives from its captain the word "*Forward.*"

Q. 20.—Will the band lead the column round the square?

A.—No: when it arrives in front of the reviewing officer it will turn to the left, draw up opposite to him, and *continue playing* until the rear of the column has passed.

Q. 21.—Do the colours change flank during the 2nd wheel?

A.—Yes; and when the right-centre company (which they follow) takes open order, they dress with the supernumerary rank, at 3 paces from the rear rank.

Q. 22.—When do they change back to the rear of the proper pivot flank of that company?

A.—When the company is performing its 3rd wheel.

Q. 23.—Are the colours cast loose when passing the reviewing officer?

A.—Yes; and *lowered* to persons entitled to that honour.

Q. 24.—Which are the places of the mounted officers while the column is marching past?

A.—The colonel, or, in his absence, the lieutenant-colonel, will be about eight paces in front of the 2nd section of the leading company, till he approaches the general; he will then salute, move out, and remain near the general till the column has passed. The senior major will be in front of the 3rd section of the leading company, a little in rear of the commanding officer: the remaining field officers follow six paces in rear of the column; the lieutenant-colonel (if not in command) being on the right, the junior major next, and the adjutant on the left.

Q. 25.—Do all the mounted officers salute as they approach the general?

A.—Yes; invariably in marching past in slow time.

Q. 26.—Do the staff officers, or does the musketry instructor, march past?

A.—The former do not; the latter does, with his own company.

Q. 27.—What commands will be given by the battalion commander, when all the companies have passed the general?

A.—“SLOPE ARMS”; followed by “BREAK INTO QUICK TIME—QUICK.”

Q. 28.—Does the column march past in quick time in the same manner as in slow time?

A.—The only difference is that the companies, in passing the reviewing officer, do not open their ranks; the colours are not cast loose or lowered; and in no case will the company officers salute.

Q. 29.—Is there a case, then, in which the mounted officers will salute?

A.—Yes; they will salute if the battalion marches past in quick, without having first marched past in slow, time.

Q. 30.—When do the officers, covering-serjeants, and colours, change their flanks, in marching past in quick time?

A.—At the same wheels, and in the same manner, as when the column marches past in *slow* time.

Q. 31.—When do they change their flanks when the column, acting in brigade, marches past at *quarter distance*?

A.—They change, by word of command, before the wheel which brings them into the saluting base; changing back after the 3rd wheel, at the word “FORWARD—QUICK: BY THE LEFT.”

Q. 32.—Is there any particular rule respecting the rear ranks of companies, when marching past?

A.—Yes: when a column marches past, the rear ranks, except while (in *slow* time) at ‘open order’, will lock up to 21 inches from the front ranks. (*Circ. Mem.*, 19th July, 1859.)

---

Q. 33.—When the battalion, having marched past in slow and quick time, or in quick time only, arrives on the ground it originally occupied, what commands will be given?

A.—The battalion commander will give “BATTALION, HALT. LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE.—QUICK MARCH.” (See Section XXVI., Q. 12-24.)

Q. 34.—Line having been formed, what is done next?

A.—The battalion commander, having directed the men to order arms, unfix bayonets, and stand at ease, will

give the caution "MANUAL AND PLATOON EXERCISE,\* TAKING THE WORD FROM THE SENIOR MAJOR": and will then proceed to the rear of the line; the senior major taking command.

Q. 35.—Do the company officers remain in front of the line during the performance of the manual and platoon?

A.—No: the major, after he has called the line to attention, shouldered arms, and opened the ranks, will give the command "OFFICERS AND COLOURS, TAKE POST OF EXERCISE IN THE REAR. QUICK MARCH."

Q. 36.—How do the officers act at those words?

A.—At the word "REAR" they face to the right and recover swords: and at the word "MARCH", move to the rear of their companies; the captains taking post six paces in rear of the centre, the subalterns taking their usual places in the supernumerary rank.

Q. 37.—How do the covering-serjeants make way for the officers to pass to the rear?

A.—Each takes a pace to his rear, and a pace to the left; resuming his place on the right of his company when the officers have passed.

Q. 38.—Do the officers, when they have reached their posts in rear, receive a command to front?

A.—No: as each arrives in the place above mentioned, he will halt, front, and carry his sword.

Q. 39.—Where do the remaining field officers, and the band, drums, and pioneers take post, when the senior major opens the ranks?

A.—They remain in the places they occupy at close order.

Q. 40.—Do the officers who carry the colours pass to the rear with the other officers?

A.—Yes.

---

\* For the words of command for the *Manual and Platoon*, see page 217.



Q. 41.—Do the covering-serjeants perform the manual and platoon with the men?

A.—No: they remain steady at the ‘shoulder’ on the right of their companies, during the performance of both those exercises.

Q. 42.—In what time will the manual and platoon be performed?

A.—The former always in slow time; the latter in both slow and quick.

Q. 43.—When the manual and platoon are finished, are the ranks closed?

A.—They are closed after the *manual* exercise.

Q. 44.—Does every person resume his post in line when the ranks take close order?

A.—No; the captains remain in rear.

Q. 45.—When do the captains move up into their places in line?

A.—When the major has given the last command “SHOULDER ARMS.”

Q. 46.—How does the senior major proceed when he has given that word?

A.—He falls back to his proper post in the rear of the line. The commander of the battalion then advances, and takes the orders of the reviewing general.

---

### *Section XXXI.—Advancing and Retiring in Line.*

(F. E., p. 106.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion in line is to advance, *what* caution is given by the commander?

A.—“THE LINE WILL ADVANCE.”

Q. 2.—To whom does that caution apply?

A.—To the front-rank centre serjeant, who immediately

selects points to march on; and to the adjutant, who superintends the selection of those points.

Q. 3.—The direction being determined, what word is given, and by whom?

A.—“STEADY”; by the adjutant.

Q. 4.—Does that word cause any person to move?

A.—No.

Q. 5.—Why, then, is it given?

A.—As a signal to the commanding officer that the battalion is in readiness to be marched off.

Q. 6.—During the advance, to what points should the attention of every person in the line be directed?

A.—He must be careful to keep his shoulders and body square to the front, preserving a light touch towards the centre of the line; and must recollect that should he lose the touch (through the men on his inward flank obliquing inwards), it is not to be regained by any sudden effort, but gradually.

Q. 7.—Does every individual in the battalion step off at the command “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—No; the serjeant-major and adjutant, in order to ascertain the correctness of the line of march, remain halted in rear of the centre while the battalion advances 20 or 30 paces.

Q. 8.—When a battalion advances in line, which is the commander's usual place?

A.—In rear of the colours, about 20 paces from the supernumerary rank.

Q. 9.—When is a line faced about in order to retire?

A.—Not until everything is prepared for its instant march; it being a rule that troops should never stand unnecessarily faced to the rear.

Q. 10.—What individuals move at the caution “THE LINE WILL RETIRE”?

A.—The colour party faces to the right-about; and the two left files of the right-centre company take two paces to the rear, and one pace outwards from each other, thus leaving an interval through which the adjutant and serjeant-major pass to the proper front of the line in order to superintend the direction.

Q. 11.—Do the colours align themselves with the proper rear rank on facing to the rear?

A.—No: they remain aligned with the proper front rank.

Q. 12.—Do the officers and covering-serjeants, also, occupy the same places when the line retires as when it advances?

A.—Yes: precisely the same.

Q. 13.—The adjutant having given "STEADY", what follows?

A.—The battalion commander gives the word "RIGHT-ABOUT FACE."

Q. 14.—By whom is a line retiring directed?

A.—By the rear-rank centre serjeant.

Q. 15.—When, and how, do the adjutant and serjeant-major resume their places in the proper rear of the line?

A.—At the command "BATTALION; HALT, FRONT": passing, as before, through an interval made by the two left files of the right-centre company.

Q. 16.—When do those files, in each instance, resume their places?

A.—As soon as the serjeant-major and adjutant have passed through the line.

---

*Section XXXII.—Charging in Line.*

(F. E., p. 107.)

Q. 1.—When the line is to charge, what caution will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“PREPARE TO CHARGE.”

Q. 2.—To what position are the arms to be brought at that caution?

A.—Those of the front rank are brought to the ‘trail’; those of the rear rank continue at the ‘slope’.

Q. 3.—What is the rule with respect to *Riflemen* when intended to charge?

A.—They will, in the first instance, advance (in quick time, and with swords fixed) at the ‘shoulder’; and at the caution “PREPARE TO CHARGE”, the front rank will ‘trail’ and the rear rank will ‘slope.’

Q. 4.—What points should be particularly attended to by the front-rank men, in coming to the ‘trail’?

A.—That they do so without altering the square position of the body, or the regularity of the step.

Q. 5.—What command is next given?

A.—“CHARGE”; at which the whole move off in *double* time: the men of the front rank bringing their arms to the ‘charge’, those of the rear rank retaining theirs at the ‘slope.’

Q. 6.—When the command “HALT” is given, are the arms still kept at the ‘charge’ and ‘slope’?

A.—No: the instant the line halts, the rifles of the front rank are brought to the ‘shoulder’, those of the rear rank to the ‘carry.’

Q. 7.—In the case of *Riflemen*?

A.—Both ranks will ‘shoulder.’

Q. 8.—Will the men, on being halted, correct their dressing?

A.—No; in whatever position they may be, they will remain perfectly steady.

*Section XXXIII.—Dressing a Battalion in Line.*

(F. E., p. 107.)

Q. 1.—When the battalion is to be dressed, after an advance or retreat in line, what word is given by the commander?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL DRESS BY THE RIGHT (or LEFT). COVERERS,——PACES TO THE FRONT.”

Q. 2.—Who will move at that caution?

A.—The captains; who if the dressing is to be by the *right*, take one pace to their front and one pace to their left; if by the *left*, change flanks; and the officer on the left of the line, who will, in either case, take one pace to his left.

Q. 3.—Do the captains in changing their flanks (in the latter case), move up as usual on the reverse flank of their front rank?

A.—No; they remain in rear till the next word is given.

Q. 4.—Do the covering-serjeants, if dressing is to be by the left, change flanks (as usual) with their captains?

A.—No; they will make way for their captains to pass, and will then move up on the right of the front rank of their companies.

Q. 5.—How do they proceed when the battalion commander gives “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—They move out the named number of paces straight to their front, face to the named flank, and cover.

Q. 6.—Does the coverer of the officer on the left of the line move out with the rest?

A.—Yes.

Q. 7.—By whom will all the coverers, when in a line, be dressed?

A.—By the field officer on the named flank.

Q. 8.—When do the captains fall back into their places on the right, or (if the dressing is by the *left*) move up on the left of their companies?

A.—As soon as the coverers, having got the word “QUICK MARCH”, have moved out of the line.

Q. 9.—Suppose the dressing is by the *left*, where does the captain of the left-flank company place himself, when he moves up?

A.—Outside the officer on the left of the line.

Q. 10.—What is the next word given?

A.—“STEADY”; by the field officer who has dressed the coverers.

Q. 11.—Does it cause anybody to move?

A.—No: it is only a signal to the commanding officer.

Q. 12.—What follows?

A.—The command “BATTALION, QUICK MARCH” is given by the commanding officer.

Q. 13.—Does the commanding officer give the command “HALT, DRESS UP”, when the line reaches the points?

A.—No; each captain, as his company arrives within 2 paces of the line of dressing, gives “*Halt. By the right (or left) dress up*”, moves out, and dresses his men from the named flank.

Q. 14.—When does each captain take post on the right of his company?

A.—When he has dressed it, and given “*Eyes front.*”

Q. 15.—Will the coverers, also, move to their places when “*Eyes front*” is given?

A.—No; the field officer who dressed them will, when the dressing of the line is completed, give a second word “STEADY”, and they will *then* take post in line.

Q. 16.—How will they pass through the line?

A.—The captains will make way for them to pass to the rear, in the same manner as to the front when dressing is by the right. (Q. 2.)

*Section XXXIV.—When the Battalion advancing  
in Line passes Obstacles.*

(F. E., p. 110.)

Q. 1.—How will a battalion advancing in line pass obstacles in its front?

A.—If the obstacles are small, and opposite to *parts* of the line, only the files impeded by them need break off, which they will do as from the flank of a company in column (*see* page 65), moving up again to the front the moment they are able to do so. If the obstacles are more considerable, and affect the entire front of the line, all the companies will break into fours.

Q. 2.—Supposing the obstacles are such that the *former* of those methods can be adopted, to what points should particular attention be given?

A.—The men who remain in line must continue to move straight to their front; neither closing on the intervals, nor pressing upon the remainder of the battalion should the obstacle increase in breadth.

Q. 3.—What rule should be observed in breaking off the files?

A.—They should invariably turn in rear of the company to which they belong; or, if the obstacle is in front of the centre of their company, should turn to the left and wheel to the right. If the line, while broken, is halted, they will form in rear of the obstacles, in lines parallel to the front.

Q. 4.—What will be gained by the files forming in that manner?

A.—The line will appear to the enemy to be unbroken; and all the men will be able to give their fire.

Q. 5.—Suppose a whole company or subdivision is broken off?

A.—It will move, not in file, but in fours; and the same rule applies to files successively broken off till they amount to a subdivision.

Q. 6.—When it is necessary that all the companies should break into fours, what caution is given by the battalion commander?

A.—“FROM THE RIGHT (*or* LEFT) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE FRONT”; followed by the command “FOURS RIGHT, LEFT WHEEL” or “FOURS LEFT, RIGHT WHEEL.”

Q. 7.—Where do the captains march when the companies pass by fours into column?

A.—On that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the company of direction: keeping their distance from that company as far as circumstances will allow.

Q. 8.—Which is the company of direction?

A.—The battalion commander may order any company to direct: if none is named, that which would be at the head of the column if “FRONT TURN” were given, will direct.

Q. 9.—Where do the supernumeraries march in the column?

A.—On the reverse flanks of those files which they respectively covered in line.

Q. 10.—How does the colour party act?

A.—Precisely as a company, but in file; acquiring, by that means, its proper place in rear of the left- or right-centre company, as the case may be.

Q. 11.—Where do the mounted officers and the serjeant-major march in the column?

A.—The major of the leading wing superintends the dressing of the heads of companies: the other major and the adjutant follow the rear four of the company they respectively covered in line. The serjeant-major marches on the outward flank of the centre serjeants.

Q. 12.—If it is required to form square, what command will be given?

A.—“SQUARE ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT) CENTRE COMPANY: WINGS INWARDS TURN.” (*See* Sec. XLVII., Q. 22.)



Q. 13.—How is line re-formed?

A.—By the companies being halted and fronted into column; and then wheeled into line as described in *Section XXVI*. Or, if the ground permits, each company may form on its leading file: that file, if the formation is to be in *double* time, continuing to advance; if in *quick* time, marking time till “FORWARD” is given to the whole. (*See Section XVII*, Q. 1—5, 8.)

Q. 14.—Is there not still another method by which a line may pass obstacles?

A.—There is; but the movement is to be considered an exceptional one. The line may advance by double fours, or files, from the centre; the command being, “BY DOUBLE FOURS (*or FILES*) FROM THE CENTRE: FOURS INWARDS (*or INWARDS TURN*), RIGHT AND LEFT WHEEL.”

Q. 15.—How will there be room for the colours and supernumeraries?

A.—The colour party will move between the two centre companies in single rank, the front rank leading, and both ranks right in front; the Queen’s colour between the two leading files (*or fours*). All the supernumeraries will march in one rank between the wings.

*Section XXXV.—When the Battalion retiring in Line passes Obstacles, or marches through a relieving Line.*

(F. E., p. 112.)

Q. 1.—What caution and command will be given when the line is to be broken into column?

A.—“FROM THE PROPER RIGHT (*or LEFT*) OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR. FOURS LEFT, RIGHT WHEEL (*or FOURS RIGHT, LEFT WHEEL*).”

Q. 2.—Where do the commanders and supernumeraries of companies march?

A.—Precisely where they do when the companies, *advancing* in line, pass into column to the front.

Q. 3.—Which company will direct?

A.—*See* Q. 8. of last *Section*.

Q. 4.—In what manner will the battalion re-form line?

A.—By halting and fronting into column, and then wheeling into line.

Q. 5.—Is there not also another method by which line may be re-formed to the proper front?

A.—Yes; by each company forming to the right-about, or left-about, on its leading file; so that each file, as it arrives in its place, may at once take up the fire.

Q. 6.—On which flank of his company will each covering-serjeant, in that case, place himself; and why?

A.—On the inner flank: in order, if *right* is leading, to preserve his own captain's place in line; if *left* is leading, to preserve the place of the captain of the company which stands, when in line, on his left. (*See* page 55, Q. 15.)

Q. 7.—Is not this movement applied to another purpose than passing through woods or other impediments?

A.—Yes; by it a retiring line passes through a line by which it is to be relieved.

Q. 8.—Should that be the object of the movement, when does the line which is to be relieved break into fours?

A.—When it arrives at 12 paces from the relieving line.

Q. 9.—Suppose a battalion *halted* in the front line, is to be relieved by another advancing in its rear; what command will the former receive, and when?

A.—“FROM THE RIGHT OF COMPANIES PASS BY FOURS TO THE REAR. FOURS RIGHT, RIGHT WHEEL: QUICK MARCH”; when the relieving line arrives within a company's wheeling distance.

Q. 10.—Is it a matter of indifference which of the two lines *breaks into column*?

A.—No; the relieving line is, for obvious reasons, never (except for purposes of parade) to be broken into column: when the companies of the other line present themselves, a sufficient number of files of the relieving line give way, in order to afford a passage through which those companies may pass to the rear.

---

*Section XXXVI.—Advancing by Wings, and Firing.*

(F. E., p. 108.)

Q. 1.—Suppose the battalion is on the march when required to advance by wings?

A.—It will invariably be halted.

Q. 2.—In the advance by wings, are both wings commanded by the same officer?

A.—No; the senior major assumes the command of the right wing, the junior major that of the left wing.

Q. 3.—What caution will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE, AND FIRE, BY WINGS.”

Q. 4.—Which wing advances first, and when does it move off?

A.—The right; the instant the left wing has fired.

Q. 5.—Does the left wing, then, get the firing words immediately on the battalion commander's caution?

A.—Yes; from the junior major.

Q. 6.—When will the senior major halt the right wing?

A.—When it has advanced 30 paces.

Q. 7.—Will he then, at once, proceed to give the firing words?

A.—He will give those words when the left wing (having loaded, and shouldered by word of command) gets “**QUICK MARCH.**”

Q. 8.—Will the left wing, also, advance 30 paces before it is halted?

A.—Yes; and will be ordered to fire as the right wing (having given its fire, loaded, and shouldered by word of command) gets “**QUICK MARCH**”: the wings moving in that manner, alternately, till line is re-formed.

Q. 9.—Are the captains of both wings on the right of their respective companies?

A.—Yes; in moving by wings, officers are posted as in line.

Q. 10.—Where does the colour party march?

A.—The officer carrying the Queen’s colour marches on the left of the right-centre company; the front-rank and rear-rank centre serjeants moving with him in their usual places. The officer carrying the regimental colour marches on the right of the left-centre company.

Q. 11.—Where do the adjutant and serjeant-major march?

A.—The adjutant with the right wing, the serjeant-major with the left wing; superintending the advance.

Q. 12.—To which flank do the men of each wing touch?

A.—To the inner flank of their wing: the right wing being led by the front-rank centre serjeant, the left wing by the regimental colour.

Q. 13.—When line is ordered to be formed on the leading wing, do the covering-serjeants of the rear wing move out to give points for their companies to form upon?

A.—No.

Q. 14.—If the left wing is in rear, by whose command does it march up to, and halt in, the line?

A.—By that of its own immediate commander.

*Section XXXVII.—Retiring by Wings, and Firing.*

(F. E., p. 109.)

Q. 1.—How does the battalion retire and fire by wings?

A.—The commanding officer will give the caution “THE BATTALION WILL RETIRE, AND FIRE, BY WINGS”; on which the junior major will order the left wing to fire.

Q. 2.—Is the left wing ordered to face about and retire, immediately after firing?

A.—No: the men, having loaded, will first be ordered to shoulder.

Q. 3.—How many paces will that wing be allowed to retire, before it is halted and fronted?

A.—Fifteen paces.

Q. 4.—What commands will be given by the senior major to the right wing, as the left is ordered to halt?

A.—He will order it to fire, and (when it has loaded) to shoulder, face-about, and retire till 15 paces beyond the left wing; and will then give “HALT, FRONT.”

Q. 5.—Is the left wing then ordered to fire?

A.—Yes; and thus the wings will proceed alternately.

Q. 6.—Suppose the battalion gets the command “RETIRE, AND FIRE, BY WINGS”, while *marching to the rear*?

A.—The right wing will, in that case, be ordered by its commander to “HALT, FRONT”; and when the left wing (having taken fifteen paces to the rear) receives the command “HALT, FRONT”, will get the firing words.

Q. 7.—How do the officers and colours move, in retiring by wings?

A.—*Precisely* as in the advance by wings.

*Section XXXVIII.—When the Battalion in Line advances in Open Column from a Flank.*

(F. E., p. 139.)

Q. 1.—When a battalion halted in line is to advance in open column of *companies* from a flank, what caution is given?

A.—“RIGHT (*or* LEFT) COMPANY TO THE FRONT : REMAINING COMPANIES, ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL.”

Q. 2.—Whom will that caution cause to move?

A.—The officer on the left of the line will fall back into the supernumerary rank : and if the advance is to be from the *right*, the captain and covering-serjeant of the right-flank company will change their flank ; the lieutenant making a corresponding change.

Q. 3.—What is the next word ; and by whom given?

A.—“QUICK MARCH” ; by the battalion commander.

Q. 4.—Does the flank company which is to lead the column, step off at a full pace, at that command?

A.—No : it advances at a short pace, until the company which it will precede in column commences its *second* wheel.

Q. 5.—Will it *then* receive any command to resume the full pace of 30 inches?

A.—Yes : the word “*Forward*”, from its captain.

Q. 6.—When, and from whom, will the next company get the command to make its 2nd wheel?

A.—From its captain, when the battalion commander gives the word “FORWARD.” (*See* Q. 11.)

Q. 7.—When the advance is from the right flank, when, and how, do the captain and coverer of each (except the leading) company change flanks?

A.—During the 1st wheel : the latter passing by the rear, the former by the front (*see* p. 4, Q. 25).

110    **ADVANCING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK.**

Q. 8.—If the advance is from the left?

A.—The captains will remain in their places, and wheel with their companies; the coverers will fall back to their places in column at the word "**MARCH.**"

Q. 9.—If the advance is from the right, when does the lieutenant of each (except the right) company change his flank?

A.—During the wheel of his company into column.

Q. 10.—How do the colours move?

A.—They wheel as a company till they have completed the quarter circle, when they receive from the officer who carries the Queen's colour, the words "*Left half turn*" if the advance is from the right, "*Right half turn*" if from the left: they then march diagonally onward until they arrive at their post in column, when they will get the word "*Front turn.*"

Q. 11.—What command is given when the remaining companies have completed the 1st wheel (into column)?

A.—"**FORWARD**": by the commander of the battalion.

Q. 12.—By whose command do the companies perform the 2nd wheel, which brings them in the rear of the leading company?

A.—By that of their respective captains; who must take care to give their words so as not to lose distance.

Q. 13.—May the line advance in column of subdivisions, or sections, from a flank?

A.—Yes: on precisely the same principle as in column of companies.

Q. 14.—How do the subdivision, or section, leaders get to their places in column?

A.—The captain of the company in which is the named subdivision (or section), who will lead the column, changes, on the caution, to the rear of its inner flank; moving up to his place on that flank immediately on the word "**QUICK MARCH**". The remaining leaders move to their places during the 1st wheel.

Q. 15.—Where do the mounted officers march, in this movement?

A.—In their proper places in open column.

---

*Section XXXIX.—An Open Column forming Line to the Front, on the March and from the Halt.*

(F. E., p. 152.)

Q. 1.—When an open column marching to the front is to form line *without halting*, which will necessarily be the company of formation?

A.—The leading company.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY”: on which the battalion *aide* in rear of the column will run out to be ready to give a distant point; the other flank *aide* marking the point of *appui*.

Q. 3.—What command will follow?

A.—“REMAINING COMPANIES, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL.”

Q. 4.—Does the leading company then halt?

A.—No: it will not be halted till the remaining companies, having wheeled into echelon, receive from the battalion commander the word “FORWARD”.

Q. 5.—What rule will be observed by the battalion commander in giving his word “FORWARD”?

A.—Immediately after giving the command “REMAINING COMPANIES, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL”, he will begin counting the number of paces taken by the companies in wheeling, and when they have taken, in paces, *one-half* the number of files of which each is composed, he will give “FORWARD.”



Q. 6.—What degree of wheel will have been completed by those companies?

A.—The eighth of a circle; for a company wheeling the *same* number of paces that it contains files, would complete the *quarter* circle.

Q. 7.—How is that conclusion arrived at?

A.—The space occupied by a file is 21 inches, and the length of a pace 30 inches. Since  $\frac{21}{30}$ , the ratio between the space occupied by the front of a file and the length of a pace, is not very different from the ratio of the radius to the quadrant; and since circumferences are to one another as their radii; the number of paces taken by the outer man of a company wheeling the quarter circle, will be *nearly* (and, for practical purposes, may be considered to *be*) equal to the number of files of which the company is composed. (*Aide Mémoire*, p. 504.)

Q. 8.—When does the captain of the leading company halt it; and how does he then proceed?

A.—He will halt it the moment “FORWARD” is given: he then changes his flank, gives the word “*Dress*”, and having dressed his men on the base and distant points, falls in on the right of his company.

Q. 9.—By whom, and when, are the ‘base points’ given; and what term is applied to the line marked by them?

A.—By the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company, when its captain gives “*Dress*.” The line marked by those serjeants is called ‘the base of Formation.’

Q. 10.—Opposite to which flanks of the company do those serjeants stand, and how do they give their points?

A.—The coverer places himself in front of the flank on which the captain was placed *before* changing his flank; *i.e.* opposite to the left if right is in front, and *vice versa*: the supernumerary serjeant, in front of the other flank. They both face to the point of *appui*, with arms at the ‘recover’: see p. 120, Q. 70.

Q. 11.—What is the ‘point of *appui*’?

A.—That extremity of the alignment, on which the

formation is made, and from which all intermediate points between that and the distant point are dressed.

Q. 12.—Suppose, then, a column is *right* in front: how will the two serjeants giving the base points face, when line is formed on the leading company?

A.—To the right; and if *left* is in front, to the left.

Q. 13.—What is the use of the 'distant point' given by the rear *aide*?

A.—The intermediate points are dressed upon it.

Q. 14.—By whom, and at what distance from the alignment marked by the *aides*, are the 'intermediate points' given; and how is that distance taken?

A.—By the coverers of the remaining companies (*see* Q. 21); at arm's length from the alignment taken up by the battalion *aides*. The distance is taken by the distant *aide's* holding out his inward arm at right angles to his body, with the hand clenched.

Q. 15.—What does the alignment taken up by the *aides* represent, in the drill of a single battalion?

A.—The brigade alignment.

Q. 16.—By whom are the intermediate points corrected, and how do they face?

A.—They are corrected by the major nearest the point of formation; or when the formation is on the *centre*, by the senior major. They face, invariably, to the point of *appui*.

Q. 17.—Do the commanders of the remaining companies, when they have wheeled into echelon, remain on those flanks which were the pivot flanks in column?

A.—No: it is an invariable rule that when companies come up successively into line, the captain of each will lead up on that flank which is nearest the point of *appui*; that being the flank from which the company will be dressed when it arrives in line.

Q. 18.—When, and how, do the captains of the remaining companies change flanks in this case?

114 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

A.—While their companies are wheeling into echelon : by the rear, as usual.

Q. 19.—On which flank of his company, when in echelon, does each coverer march ; and when does he place himself there ?

A.—On its reverse (or ‘outward’) flank ; taking post there at the word “ FORWARD ”.

Q. 20.—When does he run out to take up his covering in line ?

A.—When the inward flank of his company arrives within 20 paces of its point of formation.

Q. 21.—On what points do the serjeants giving the intermediate points cover : and when do they take post in line ?

A.—They cover on the base points : and take post in line when the 2nd company on their outward flank receives the word “ *Eyes front.* ”

Q. 22.—How is each of the rear companies led up into line ?

A.—By its captain ; who, when its inward flank reaches the outward flank of the *rear* rank of the company last formed in line, gives the command “ *Right (or Left) wheel* ”, and, when it has wheeled parallel to the alignment, “ *Halt, dress up.* ”

Q. 23.—When do the coverer, and senior supernumerary serjeant, of the company of formation take post in line ?

A.—At the major’s word “ STEADY,” on the completion of the formation.

Q. 24.—The mounted officers ?

A.—The major who has corrected the points, after giving his word “ STEADY ” ; the other major, and adjutant, during the formation.

Q. 25.—How does the colour party move up into line, and by whom will it be dressed ?

A.—Independently, as a company ; and will be dressed

by the captain of the *left*-centre company if *right* was in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 26.—Suppose an open column marching to the *rear* is ordered to form line on its present leading company, how does the formation proceed?

A.—The captain of that company will act precisely as has been explained for the captain of the *proper* leading company, except that his word will be "*Halt, front, dress.*" The other captains will *not* change their flanks, and will lead up into line as in forming on a rear company from the halt. (See Q. 53, 54.)

Q. 27.—When should companies coming up into line be halted; and why?

A.—They should always be halted in rear of the points, and then dressed up into line: it being obviously necessary that the points should be kept clear.

Q. 28.—When a *halted* column is required to form line on its leading company, what caution will it receive?

A.—Precisely that which is given when the movement is performed on the march; "*FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY.*"

Q. 29.—Who will move at that caution?

A.—The major nearest the point of formation; the captain, lieutenant, and covering-serjeant of each company; the senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company; and the two flank *aides*.

Q. 30.—Where do the captain, lieutenant, and covering-serjeant of each company place themselves?

A.—The captain changes his flank, the lieutenant making a corresponding change. The coverer of each (except the leading) company changes flank with his captain as usual. The coverer of the leading company will give a base point, the supernumerary serjeant of that company giving the second base point. (See Q. 9, 10.)

Q. 31.—How will the major nearest the point of formation, and the two *aides*, proceed?

A.—As in the same formation from the march.

116 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

Q. 32.—Does the captain of the leading company change his flank at the caution to form line, whether the column is right or left in front ?

A.—Yes.

Q. 33.—Why does he change flank when the column is *left* in front ; seeing that the right, which was the pivot flank in column, will also be his proper flank in line ?

A.—Because it is an invariable rule that in all formations of line, the dressing is made *from* the point of *appui*, or flank whence the formation commences, to the opposite or distant point. (Q. 11.)

Q. 34.—Does he then at once proceed to dress the company ?

A.—No ; he will not do so until the remaining companies are wheeling back into echelon.

Q. 35.—Do the captains of the remaining companies, also, change flanks whether right or left is in front ; and, if so, why ?

A.—They do ; for the reason given in the Answer to Q. 17.

Q. 36.—What caution or command is next given : suppose *right* is in front ?

A.—The caution “REMAINING COMPANIES, FOUR PACES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL.”

Q. 37.—Whom will that caution cause to move ?

A.—The captain, covering-serjeant, and pivot man of each (except the leading) company, will proceed as explained in *Section IX.*, Q. 3.

Q. 38.—What command is next given, and when ?

A.—“QUICK MARCH” ; when the coverers of those companies, having taken their 4 paces to the rear, have halted and faced about.

Q. 39.—Where do the captain and coverer of each (*except the leading*) company take post, when the former *has given his word* “*Eyes front*” ?

A.—The captain on the inner, the coverer on the outer, flank. (Q. 17.)

Q. 40.—When all the companies in echelon have received the command "*Eyes front*" from their captains, and when the latter have fallen in on the inner flanks, what follows?

A.—The word "FORM LINE: QUICK MARCH" is given by the battalion commander.

Q. 41.—How does the formation proceed when that command is given?

A.—Precisely as when the remaining companies, having wheeled into echelon on the march, receive the command "FORWARD." (Q. 22.)

Q. 42.—When will the supernumerary rank of each company gain its proper distance of three paces from the rear rank?

A.—Whether the movement is done from the halt or on the march, the supernumerary rank of the company that *last* forms in line will step back when that company gets "*Halt, dress up*"; the supernumerary rank of each of the other companies, when the company which is to form on its outer flank gets "*Right (or) Left wheel*."

Q. 43.—How does the colour party get to its place in line?

A.—As in the same movement done on the march. (See Q. 25.)

Q. 44.—When does the coverer of each (except the leading) company run out to give his point; and which flank of his company will he mark?

A.—He will run out, as usual, when he arrives within 20 paces of the alignment; marking the left of his company if the column was right in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 45.—Suppose line is to be formed *obliquely* to the front of the column, what preliminary step will be necessary?

A.—The leading company will be wheeled back, on its reverse flank, into the required direction.

Q. 46.—The remaining companies then wheeling their 4 paces, as already explained?

A.—No: it will be necessary for the remaining companies to wheel, *in addition to those 4 paces*, half the number of the paces wheeled back by the leading company.

Q. 47.—Why?

A.—Because otherwise they would not be placed, as it is essential they should be, perpendicularly to the lines by which they must march to their several points of formation. (*See Section LXIV., Q. 34.*)

Q. 48.—May not the leading company, instead of being wheeled *back*, be wheeled *up* on its reverse flank?

A.—Yes; in which case the remaining companies will proceed as when an open column forms line to the reverse flank. (*See Section XL.*)

Q. 49.—How is line formed on the *rear* company of an open column?

A.—By the remaining companies being faced about; wheeled 4 paces backwards on their reverse flanks; and then marched up into line, rear rank in front.

Q. 50.—Do the captains change flanks on the caution?

A.—No: *see Answer to Q. 17, p. 113.*

Q. 51.—By which flank will the captain of the company of formation order it to dress; and when?

A.—By the left if right is in front, and *vice versa*; when the remaining companies are wheeling into echelon.

Q. 52.—How do the captain, pivot man, and coverer of each of the remaining companies act?

A.—As explained in *Section IX., Q. 20—23.*

Q. 53.—When will the captain of each of those companies give his word "*Right (or Left) wheel*"?

A.—When the inner flank of its proper rear rank *reaches the outer flank of the front rank of the company last formed in line.*

Q. 54.—What other words will he give?

A.—When his company has wheeled into the alignment, “*Forward*”: when it is two paces in rear of the alignment, “*Halt, front: dress up.*”

Q. 55.—When line is to be formed on a *central* company of an open column, on which of their flanks do the remaining companies wheel back?

A.—Those in front of the named company, on their proper pivot flanks; those in rear, on their reverse flanks.

Q. 56.—Does the captain of the named company change his flank on the caution; and from which flank does he dress the company?

A.—He changes his flank only if *right* is in front; the company being in either case dressed from the right.

Q. 57.—How do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant giving the base points in front of the named company, place themselves?

A.—The covering-serjeant opposite its left; the supernumerary serjeant opposite its right: facing each other.

Q. 58.—Why do they face inwards?

A.—Because when a formation is on a central company, the centre of that company is the point of *appui* for the line.

Q. 59.—What is meant by ‘a central company’?

A.—Any except either of the two flank companies.

Q. 60.—By whom, and whence, will the coverers, as they run out, be dressed?

A.—By the senior major, from the right of the company of formation.

Q. 61.—What will be the serjeant-major’s duty in this central formation?

A.—He will move up to the left of the company of formation; dress the coverer of the next company on its right; and then move to his place in rear of the line.

Q. 62.—Where does the centre *aide* place himself; and how do all three *aides* face?



120 AN OPEN COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

A.—The centre *aide* will be at arm's length from the supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation; all three *aides* facing, as usual, towards the major who is correcting the points.

Q. 63.—How would the *aides* face in brigade?

A.—To the brigade point of *appui*.

Q. 64.—How do the companies in front and rear of the named company move up into line?

A.—Those in front, as when the formation is on the rear company; those in rear, as when the formation is on the front company.

Q. 65.—How will the senior major, on the completion of the formation, pass to his place in rear of the line?

A.—Through the centre. (*See* p. 97, Q. 10.)

Q. 66.—On which company of the column will line be formed, if it is to be formed '*in inverted order*'; and what will be the caution?

A.—On the front or rear company: the caution being "IN INVERTED ORDER, FORM LINE ON No. —".

Q. 67.—How will the companies form, in that case?

A.—So as to place the right-flank company on the left, the left-flank company on the right, of the line.

Q. 68.—By what other method may line be formed from open column?

A.—The column may be closed to quarter or close distance, and then deployed. (*See* Sections LX., LXIII.)

Q. 69.—Whenever the captain moves from the front rank, by whom is his place preserved?

A.—As a general rule, by the coverer: but when both the captain and coverer move out during a formation in line, by the rear-rank man of the pivot file.

Q. 70.—How do coverers carry their arms while giving *points* for the formation of a line?

A.—At the '*recover*.'

Q. 71.—To whom does that rule *not* apply?

A.—To the coverer marking the outer flank of the *front* company (subdivision, or section) of an open column wheeling into line: who will give his point as directed in *Sections VIII.*, Q. 29, and *XIII.*, Q. 3. (*See pp. 31, 44.*)

---

*Section XL.—An Open Column forming Line to the Reverse Flank.*

(F. E., p. 157.)

Q. 1.—On the caution to “FORM LINE TO THE REVERSE FLANK”, who will move?

A.—All the captains, whether right or left is in front, change flanks. (*See page 48, Q. 3.*)

Q. 2.—Their covering-serjeants changing with them as usual?

A.—No: the coverers will take the places their captains have left.

Q. 3.—What is the next word given?

A.—The captain of the leading company will immediately give “*Right* (or *Left*) *wheel*”; when the company has wheeled parallel to the alignment, “*Forward*”; and after advancing three paces, “*Halt, dress up*”.

Q. 4.—When, and by whom, will the base be marked?

A.—The moment the leading company is ordered by its captain to “*wheel*”, its coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant will run out to mark the base.

Q. 5.—Opposite to which flank will each place himself; and how facing?

A.—The coverer, as usual, will take the flank furthest from the captain; and both serjeants will face to the point

of *appui*, i.e., to the right if the column was right in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 6.—When will the next company, and each of the others in succession, be ordered by its captain to wheel into the new direction?

A.—As it reaches the outward flank of the last halted company.

Q. 7.—Will the coverers run out, as usual, to mark the outward flanks of their companies?

A.—Yes; when within 20 paces of their ground.

Q. 8.—By whom will the coverers be dressed?

A.—By the major nearest the point of formation, who will give “STEADY” when the formation is completed.

Q. 9.—When do the supernumeraries of each company step back to their proper distance; and the base points take post in line?

A.—The former, as the rear of the column passes clear of them; the latter, at the major’s word “STEADY.”

Q. 10.—At what angle to the direction in which the column is marching, must line be formed?

A.—It may be formed at any angle.

Q. 11.—Suppose line is to be formed at an angle less than a right angle to the direction of the column?

A.—The captain of the 2nd company will, in that case, be previously warned; in order that he may change direction on the caution.

Q. 12.—Having ordered his company to change direction, how far will he allow it to wheel before giving “Forward”?

A.—Till it is on a line parallel to the new alignment.

Q. 13.—When do all the captains in rear of the 2nd company order their companies to change direction?

A.—As they arrive at the spot where that company changed direction.

Q. 14.—What word is given by each captain when his company is to change direction?

A.—“*Left wheel*” if right is in front; and *vice versa*.

Q. 15.—When, and how, will the captains, in this case, change flanks?

A.—They continue on their proper pivot flanks till they order their companies to change direction; and *then* shift, passing (as usual) by the rear.

[For a column of subdivisions or sections forming to the reverse flank, see Section XV.]

*Section XLI.—When the Battalion in Line advances in Double Column from the Centre.*

(F. E., p. 140.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when the line is to advance in double column of *subdivisions* from the centre?

A.—The commander of the battalion will give “**TWO CENTRE SUBDIVISIONS TO THE FRONT. REMAINING SUBDIVISIONS, ON THE MOVE, INWARDS WHEEL.**”

Q. 2.—To what officers will that caution apply?

A.—The officer on the left of the line falls back into the supernumerary rank; and the officers carrying the colours step back two paces. The captain of the right-centre company moves out and places himself in front of the left file of his right subdivision, all the other right-wing captains changing flanks; the captain of the left-centre company moves out in front of the right file of his left subdivision: and the lieutenant of each company moves to the rear of its centre.

Q. 3.—To whom does the caution also apply?

A.—To the supernumerary rank, which closes up two

paces: to the remainder of the colour party: and to the coverers of the two flank companies (*see* Q. 18).

Q. 4.—What command is next given?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”, by the battalion commander.

Q. 5.—Do the two centre subdivisions advance at a full pace, at the command “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—No: they advance at a shortened pace until the two following subdivisions, at the battalion commander's word “FORWARD”, commence their 2nd wheel. The captain of the left-centre company then gives “*Forward*”, on which *both* the leading subdivisions step off at full pace.

Q. 6.—The colours having fallen to the rear, will there not be an interval between the two leading subdivisions?

A.—Yes; to fill which, the left subdivision of the right-centre company will close on the other leading subdivision, while stepping short.

Q. 7.—Why is the word “*Forward*” given by the captain leading the *left*-centre subdivision; and why does not that subdivision close to the other centre subdivision, instead of the *latter* closing?

A.—Because the *proper left*, unless it is otherwise ordered, is the directing flank in all double columns; and the officers on that flank command the subdivision (company, or section) aligned with them in the double column, as well as their own.

Q. 8.—Where do the captains and lieutenants march in the double column?

A.—The former, on the outward flank of the leading subdivision of their companies: the latter, on the outward flank of the rear subdivision.

Q. 9.—When, and how, do they move to those places?

A.—They move across, by the front, during the 1st wheel. (*See* page 4, Q. 25, 26.)

Q. 10.—Where do the ensign and covering-serjeant of *each* company march?

A.—In their usual places in column of subdivisions; *viz.* the former in rear of the inward flank of the rear subdivision, the latter in rear of the 2nd file from the flank on which the captain is marching.

Q. 11.—Where do the mounted officers, and colours, march?

A.—The junior major marches in rear of the pivot flank of the 2nd subdivision from the front of the left wing, superintending the direction: the senior major and adjutant, having superintended the 2nd wheels of all the subdivisions, follow in rear of the column. The colour party will be in rear of the centre of the two leading subdivisions.

Q. 12.—The serjeant-major, and band?

A.—The band will be in rear of the column; the serjeant-major in rear of the colour party.

Q. 13.—When the advance is to be in double column of *companies*, which of the captains will change flanks on the caution?

A.—The captain of the left-centre company, only.

Q. 14.—On which flank of his company will each captain march; and when, and how, will he get there?

A.—On the outward flank; the captain of each right-wing (except the right-centre) company wheeling with it at the word "QUICK MARCH"; the captain of each left-wing (except the left-centre) company moving across by the front during the 1st wheel.

Q. 15.—Will the lieutenants of the left wing, when their captains change flanks, make a corresponding change?

A.—Yes.

Q. 16.—Suppose the double column is to be formed of *sections*, where will all the section leaders place themselves on the caution?

A.—In rear of the inner flank of the sections they will respectively lead.

126 A DOUBLE COLUMN FORMING LINE TO THE FRONT.

Q. 17.—By whom will the sections of each company be led?

A.—The leading section by the captain; the next by the senior supernumerary serjeant; the next by the lieutenant; the last by the ensign.

Q. 18.—In the advance by double column, are any points given for the 2nd wheel of the companies, subdivisions, or sections of each wing?

A.—Yes; by the covering-serjeants of the two flank companies: the coverer of No. 1 making allowance for the distance the right-centre company, subdivision, or section, will have to incline to its left. (*See Q. 6.*)

Q. 19.—How do those coverers face; and when do they move off in their places in column?

A.—In giving their points they face to the front; they move off in their places in column when their own companies (or their outer subdivisions or sections) have completed their 2nd wheel.

---

*Section XLII.—When the Double Column, advancing, forms Line to the Front.*

(F. E., p. 159.)

Q. 1.—How should a double column always form line to the front?

A.—On the march; unless it is necessary that line should be formed without advancing the two front companies (subdivisions, or sections), in which case the column must be halted, closed to quarter distance, and deployed.

Q. 2.—On what principle is line formed to the front on the march, from double column?

A.—On the same principle as from a single column on the march. (*See Section XXXIX.*)

Q. 3.—What caution will be given by the battalion commander; and what rule will he necessarily observe in giving it?

A.—“FORM LINE ON THE TWO CENTRE COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS *or* SECTIONS). REMAINING COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS *or* SECTIONS), OUTWARDS WHEEL”: those words being given when the column is at such a distance in rear of the intended alignment, as will allow of the two centre companies (subdivisions, or sections) continuing to advance while the remainder are wheeling into echelon.

Q. 4.—By whom, and when, are the two centre subdivisions (suppose the double column is one of subdivisions) halted?

A.—They are halted by the commander of the left-centre company, when the remaining subdivisions, having wheeled the eighth of a circle, get the word “FORWARD” from the battalion commander.

Q. 5.—What further command will the two centre subdivisions receive from the left-centre captain: and why?

A.—“*Four paces outwards close. Quick March*”: in order that the colour party may move up between them.

Q. 6.—When, and how, do the commanders of the remaining subdivisions shift to their inward flanks?

A.—They change flanks, passing (as usual) by the rear, while their subdivisions are wheeling outwards.

Q. 7.—Do the lieutenants who are leading subdivisions, move out, on coming up into line, to dress them?

A.—No: after giving their word “—*wheel. Halt, dress up*” they fall into the supernumerary rank; both subdivisions of each company being dressed by the captain. (*See* p. 49, Q. 9, 10.)

Q. 8.—From which flank of his company does each captain dress it?

A.—From that nearest the centre of the line.

Q. 9.—When do the covering-serjeants of the two centre companies move out to give the base points for the formation of the line?



A.—When the two centre subdivisions receive the command “*Halt*” from the left-centre captain.

Q. 10.—Do they then place themselves on the outward flanks of those two subdivisions?

A.—No : they place themselves at those points at which the outward flanks of their *companies* are to rest in line ; facing inwards. (*See* p. 119, Q. 58.)

Q. 11.—When, and by whom, will the two centre subdivisions be ordered to dress?

A.—The front-rank centre serjeant having moved out and (placing himself at arms’ length from the centre *aide*, and facing to the right) given a centre point, the captains of the two centre companies will move across by the front and place themselves one on each side of him. Each centre captain will then give his own inner subdivision “*Dress*”.

Q. 12.—By whom, and whence, is the covering superintended?

A.—By the senior major from the centre, where he will remain until the line is formed.

Q. 13.—How will the senior major resume his post, when line is formed?

A.—He will pass through the centre of the line : *see* Sec. XXXI., Q. 10.

Q. 14.—Should there not be a mounted officer at each of the distant points?

A.—Yes : the junior major will move out to the left of the line, the adjutant to the right.

Q. 15.—How do the battalion *aides* give their points?

A.—They mark the centre and flanks, as usual ; facing inwards.

Q. 16.—When will the junior major and adjutant, the base points, and the centre serjeant, take post in line?

A.—When the senior major gives the word “*STEADY*”, at the completion of the formation.

Q. 17.—How is the serjeant-major employed during the formation of the line?

A.—In superintending the dressing of the supernumerary rank.

Q. 18.—From what point do the supernumeraries take up their dressing?

A.—From the centre, where the serjeant-major is posted.

Q. 19.—Is there a point given for each subdivision of the several companies?

A.—No: the covering-serjeant of each company takes distance, as usual, for both its subdivisions.

Q. 20.—When does he run out to give his point?

A.—When the inward flank of the leading subdivision of his company arrives within 20 paces of the alignment.

Q. 21.—How may a double column form line on the two centre subdivisions *facing to the rear*?

A.—By changing the front of the column to the rear (*see* Section LIX.); and then forming line as already explained.

*Section XLIII.—A Double Column, Halted  
and on the March, forming Line to the  
Right or Left.*

(F. E., p. 161.)

Q. 1.—If line is to be formed to the *right*, on the march, what word will first be given by the battalion commander: and why?

A.—The word "COLUMN, BY THE RIGHT": in order that the leaders on that flank may correct their covering and distances; the column having previously been (as usual) marching by the left. *See* p. 124. Q. 7.

Q. 2.—What other caution or command will be given in order to form line, on the march, to the right?

130 A DOUBLE COLUMN FORMING LINE TO A FLANK.

A.—The caution “FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT,” followed by the command “RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.”

Q. 3.—By whom will both subdivisions of each right-wing company (suppose the column is one of subdivisions) be halted and dressed in line?

A.—By the captain ; who will move, during the wheel, to the right of the *company*.

Q. 4.—When do the right-wing *rear* subdivision leaders fall back into the supernumerary rank ; and all the left-wing subdivision leaders shift to the inward flanks of their subdivisions ?

A.—When the right wing receives the command “RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.”

Q. 5.—Where will the supernumerary serjeant of the right-flank company place himself, at that word ?

A.—He will mark the right of the line.

Q. 6.—How will the colour party proceed ?

A.—It will wheel as a subdivision, and form on the outward flank of the right-centre company.

Q. 7.—When do the covering-serjeants of the right wing run out to give points for their companies ?

A.—When the commander of the battalion gives “RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE.”

Q. 8.—Which flank of their companies do those serjeants mark ; and how do they face in giving their points ?

A.—They mark the left of their companies ; facing to the right.

Q. 9.—How do the subdivisions of each company take up their dressing ?

A.—They feel to the right of the *company*.

Q. 10.—Are the same points thrown out for this formation, as are given when line is formed to the *front* on the two centre subdivisions ?

A.—Yes ; except that the centre serjeant does not give a *centre point*.

Q. 11.—How do the left-wing subdivisions form line?

A.—As explained in *Section XV.*, p. 48.

Q. 12.—What will be the serjeant-major's duty?

A.—He will dress the supernumerary rank from the right.

Q. 13.—How does a double column on the march form line to the *left*?

A.—Precisely on the same principle as when forming to the right; the command being "LEFT WING, LEFT WHEEL INTO LINE."

Q. 14.—When a *halted* double column of subdivisions is to form line to the right, what caution and command will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—"FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT. RIGHT WING, RIGHT WHEEL INTO LINE. THE WHOLE, QUICK MARCH."

Q. 15.—How will each wing proceed?

A.—The subdivisions of the named wing will wheel into line as explained in *Section XIII.*, except that the coverers will face (with arms at the 'recover') to the point of *appui*: the subdivisions of the other wing will form successively to their reverse flank as described in *Section XV.*

#### *Section XLIV.—When the Line retires in Open Column from a Flank.*

(F. E., p. 143.)

Q. 1.—When the line is to retreat from a flank, what caution is given?

A.—"RETIRE BY COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS) FROM THE LEFT IN REAR OF THE RIGHT", or "FROM THE RIGHT IN REAR OF THE LEFT", according as the *defile* (see Q. 22.) is in rear of the right or left flank of the line.

## 132 RETIRING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK.

Q. 2.—Suppose the retreat is to be from the left in rear of the right, and by *companies*; who will move on the caution?

A.—The officer on the left of the line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which closes up two paces: and the coverer of the right-flank company falls back and gives a point in rear of the coverer of No. 2 company; at a distance equal to the breadth of a company and three paces.

Q. 3.—Why is that point given?

A.—That on it the several companies may make their 2nd wheel.

Q. 4.—How does the coverer face in giving it?

A.—To the proper front.

Q. 5.—Does the supernumerary rank always take two paces to the front, when the movement is to be along the rear of the line?

A.—Yes.

Q. 6.—What becomes the duty of the captain of the company on that flank (supposed to be the *left*) whence the retreat is to commence?

A.—To give his company the command "*Right-about face. Quick March*": as it is taking the 3rd pace to the rear, "*Left wheel*": and when it has wheeled the quarter circle, "*Forward*."

Q. 7.—When will each succeeding (except the right-flank) company be faced about by its captain?

A.—In time for it to step off when the company that has moved from its proper left is within *three* paces of its proper right flank.

Q. 8.—When will each of those succeeding companies be ordered to wheel to its left?

A.—As it is taking the 3rd pace to the rear of the line.

Q. 9.—While each company is passing along the rear of the line, on which flank does its captain march?

A.—On that which is next the line.

Q. 10.—That being the reverse flank, when will he shift to the pivot flank, of his company ; and what word will he then give ?

A.—He changes his flank when, having reached the left flank of the right-flank company (in rear of which the column is to retire), he gives his own company "*Right wheel.*" On the completion of that wheel, he will give "*Forward : By the right.*"

Q. 11.—Where does each covering-serjeant march ?

A.—In the proper rear of the 2nd file from that flank of his company on which the captain is marching, till the company commences its 2nd wheel ; he then places himself in the proper rear of the 2nd file from the flank to which the captain has changed.

Q. 12.—When will the captain of No. 1 give his words "*Right-about face,*" and "*Quick March*" ?

A.—He gives the former word when No. 2 is commencing its 2nd wheel ; the latter, three paces before the wheel is completed.

Q. 13.—When, and how, will he change his flank ?

A.—Before giving the word "*Right-about face*" ; by the rear, as usual.

Q. 14.—How does the colour party move ?

A.—Independently, as a company, following the left-centre company : and, after completing its 2nd wheel, gets to its place in the proper rear of the right-centre company by moving up to the wheeling point, and marking time.

Q. 15.—If the retreat is to commence from the *right*, how will the captains act, on the caution ?

A.—They will all, except the captain of the left-flank company, change flanks.

Q. 16.—When the retreat is to be by *subdivisions* or *sections*, by whose command will they face about, march off, and wheel ?

A.—They will each face about, and march off, by command of their captain : their proper leaders will then take command of them, and give all the necessary words.

134 RETIRING IN OPEN COLUMN FROM A FLANK.

Q. 17.—Which subdivision, or section, of each company will invariably be led by the *captain*; and why?

A.—That which steps off last; so that when the column is halted and fronted, or turned to its front, the captain may be at the head of the company.

Q. 18.—In this movement, will not each company (or subdivision) acquire more than its proper distance?

A.—Yes: if each wheels correctly, it will, when the column is formed, have *one-half* more than its proper distance: this distance must be corrected either by the leading company (or subdivisions) stepping short or marking time until the others close to wheeling distance; or by the leading company (or subdivisions) moving forward in quick time, and the remainder closing at the double; as the commander of the battalion may direct.

Q. 19.—Should circumstances render the retreat by the *wheel* of companies or subdivisions impracticable, how may it be effected?

A.—By each company (or subdivision) facing, or forming fours, in the direction of the company of formation; and moving along the rear of the line until opposite the defile, when its leader will give "*Rear turn*."

Q. 20.—Does each leader continue marching with his leading file, until it is necessary to give the word "*Rear turn*"?

A.—No; when he arrives at the inward flank of the company, or subdivision, in rear of which he is to retire, he halts and allows his company or subdivision to move onward (led by the covering-serjeant) until its rear file or four reaches him; and then gives "*Rear turn*."

Q. 21.—Where does the covering-serjeant place himself at that word?

A.—In the *proper* rear of the 2nd file from the flank on which his captain is marching.

Q. 22.—To what purpose is the movement described in *this Section*, applied?

A.—To retiring over a bridge, or through a defile.

*Section XLV.—When the Line retires in Double Column from both Flanks in rear of the Centre.*

(F. E., p. 145.)

Q. 1.—When the line is to retreat from both flanks, by subdivisions, what caution is given?

A.—“RETIRE BY SUBDIVISIONS FROM BOTH FLANKS IN REAR OF THE CENTRE.”

Q. 2.—Who will move at that caution?

A.—The officer on the left of the line falls back into the supernumerary rank, which will close up two paces: all the right-wing captains (except the captain of the right-centre company) change flanks, the lieutenants making a corresponding change: and the coverers of the two centre companies fall back, and give the points for the remaining subdivisions to wheel on.

Q. 3.—Where do those coverers give their points; and how facing?

A.—At subdivision distance and three paces, in rear of the 2nd files from the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions: facing to the proper front.

Q. 4.—What follows?

A.—The two flank subdivisions of the line receive from their respective captains the command “*Right-about face. Quick March.*”

Q. 5.—Do those subdivisions also get the word to *wheel*, from their captains?

A.—No: as they are taking the 3rd pace to the rear, they receive the command “*Right (or Left) wheel*”; and when they have wheeled the quarter circle, “*Forward*”; from their proper leaders.

Q. 6.—The captains, then, do not proceed to the rear with those subdivisions of their companies which lead while retiring?

A.—No: during the retreat, each captain leads that



subdivision of his company, which, when *fronted*, would become the leading one.

Q. 7.—When is each of the succeeding subdivisions faced to the right-about, in order to retire?

A.—In time for it to step off when that subdivision which it is to follow is within three paces of its inward flank.

Q. 8.—While each subdivision is proceeding along the rear of the line, on which flank does its leader march?

A.—On its inward flank: as in the retreat from one flank in rear of the other. (*See last Section.*)

Q. 9.—When does he shift to the outward flank?

A.—While his subdivision is making its 2nd wheel.

Q. 10.—When are the two centre subdivisions faced to the right-about?

A.—When the subdivisions which are to precede them in retiring, commence their 2nd wheel.

Q. 11.—Does each of those subdivisions receive the necessary commands from its own leader?

A.—No: the commands "*Right-about face.—Quick March*", given by the captain of the left-centre company, apply to *both* subdivisions. (*See Q. 15.*)

Q. 12.—When does the captain of the left-centre company give his word "*March*"?

A.—When the outward subdivisions of the two centre companies are three paces from the completion of their 2nd wheel.

Q. 13.—How does the colour party move?

A.—It faces about with the two centre subdivisions, and then takes three paces to its new front; stepping off when those subdivisions get the word "*March*".

Q. 14.—How is the interval which the colours leave between the two centre subdivisions, filled up?

A.—By the right-centre subdivision inclining to its *present right* as it moves off.

Q. 15.—Which is the directing flank of the column while retiring; and who will give the word "*Forward*" at the completion of the 2nd wheels?

A.—The present right is the directing flank: the word "*Forward*" being, therefore, given by the proper left-wing leaders. (*See* p. 124, Q. 7.)

Q. 16.—Where do the coverers giving the wheeling points march in the double column: and when do they take those places?

A.—In the proper rear of the 2nd files from the outward flanks of their inner subdivisions; stepping off at the left-centre captain's word "*March*".

Q. 17.—Where do the mounted officers march?

A.—The junior major will superintend the direction as in open column: the senior major and adjutant will superintend the wheels of all the subdivisions, and then follow in rear of the column.

Q. 18.—Should the ground, or other circumstances, not admit of the subdivisions *wheeling*, how may the retreat be effected?

A.—By the subdivisions facing (or forming fours) inwards, and moving along the rear of the line until they meet in rear of the two centre subdivisions; when they will receive from their respective leaders the word "*Rear turn*."

Q. 19.—Do the subdivision leaders move on with their subdivisions until they meet in rear of the centre?

A.—No: on reaching the outward flanks of the two centre subdivisions, they halt till their rear file (or four) reaches them, when they will give "*Rear turn*", and move off on the outward flanks of their subdivisions: the proper left-wing leaders giving "*By the present right*."

Q. 20.—Will there not be a loss of distance between the subdivisions?

A.—Yes; which will be corrected as already explained. (*See* p. 134, Q. 18.)

*Section XLVI.—When the Battalion in Line moves in Open Column from either Flank along the Rear.*

(F.E., p. 138.)

Q. 1.—If the movement is to commence from the right flank, what caution will be given?

A.—“THE BATTALION WILL MOVE IN COLUMN OF COMPANIES (SUBDIVISIONS or SECTIONS) FROM THE RIGHT ALONG THE REAR.”

Q. 2.—Who will move, on that caution?

A.—The officer on the left of the line falls into the supernumerary rank, which will close up two paces. (See p. 132, Q. 5.)

Q. 3.—Suppose the movement is to be by *companies*:—what command is then given?

A.—The captain of the right-flank company gives it the words “*Fours left. Left wheel: Quick March.*”

Q. 4.—Is each company led by its captain, while moving in fours to the rear of the line?

A.—No: after its leading four has arrived at 3 paces in rear of the line, the company will be led by its covering-serjeant only.

Q. 5.—Where does the captain place himself, on giving his word “*Fours left*”; and when does he move out to the rear of the line?

A.—On giving “*Fours left*” he places himself, as usual, on the right of his leading four: on giving “*Quick March*” he moves out with his company till 3 paces in rear of the line, when he will halt till the rear four reaches him. (Q. 8.)

Q. 6.—When is each succeeding company commanded to form fours to its left, and to move out of the line?

A.—It will get the word “*Fours left*” when the company which is to precede it in column receives the

command "*Front turn*;" and will get "*Quick March*" the moment that company passes it.

Q. 7.—When does each company get "*Front turn*"?

A.—When its right flank clears the supernumerary rank of the line.

Q. 8.—Where do the commander and covering-serjeant of each company place themselves, when the former gives the word "*Front turn*"?

A.—The former on the inward (i.e. the right) flank; the latter in rear of the 2nd file from that flank.

Q. 9.—That being the reverse flank in column, do they shift to the pivot flank when they clear the line?

A.—Not unless the commander of the battalion gives the word "CHANGE YOUR FLANKS."

Q. 10.—How do the supernumeraries act?

A.—They face, and wheel into column, with those files which they covered in line; the lieutenant, if the movement commences from the *right*, then changing his flank.

Q. 11.—Against what should the captains guard?

A.—They should be careful not to lose distance.

Q. 12.—How do the colours move?

A.—Precisely as a company, but in file.

Q. 13.—When do they receive the word "*Front turn*" from the officer carrying the Queen's colour?

A.—When they have cleared the supernumerary rank of the line; so as to follow in rear of the usual files from the right flank of the right-centre company.

Q. 14.—In what case would they shift to the rear of the pivot flank of that company?

A.—If the command "CHANGE YOUR FLANKS" were given, they would receive from the officer carrying the Queen's colour the command "*Left half turn, Double*", and on reaching their proper post, "*Front turn, Quick*."

Q. 15.—Where do the mounted officers and the serjeant-major march?

A.—The former march on the proper pivot flanks of the companies they cover in line; unless “CHANGE YOUR FLANKS” is given, when they shift to the reverse flanks. The latter marches in rear of the centre serjeants.

Q. 16.—When this movement is performed by subdivisions or sections; which subdivision, or section, of his company will each captain lead?

A.—The front.

Q. 17.—By whom, then, will the words “*Fours left* (or *right*). *Left* (or *right*) *wheel: Quick March*”, and “*Front turn*”, be given to the rear subdivision (or each of the rear sections) of each company?

A.—By its own leader.

Q. 18.—How is this movement performed when it commences from the *left* of the battalion?

A.—In the same manner as when it commences from the right; the battalion commander’s caution being followed, of course, by the commands “*Fours right*”. “*Right wheel: Quick March*”, and “*Front turn*”, from each company (subdivision, or section) leader.

Q. 19.—On which flanks will the leaders march when in column?

A.—On the *left*; unless ordered to change flanks.

*Section XLVII.—A Battalion in Open, Quarter-distance, or Double Column forming Square.*

(F. E., p. 173.)

Q. 1.—What is the object of forming square; and how many ranks deep are squares generally formed?

A.—Squares are formed, *four-deep*, to resist attacks of cavalry. Two-deep squares are used to protect baggage, &c. against infantry only.

Q. 2.—When an open column halted is required to form square on its *leading* company, what caution is given?

A.—“ON THE LEADING COMPANY, FORM SQUARE”: followed by the command “QUICK (*or* DOUBLE) MARCH.”

Q. 3.—Who should move at the word “MARCH”?

A.—The whole of the battalion except the leading company.

Q. 4.—Does no individual of the leading company move?

A.—Yes; its flank files face outwards; and its captain, coverer, and supernumeraries run to the rear of the next company.

Q. 5.—What command will the next company receive, as it closes on the leading company?

A.—It will halt without any word of command: and its flank files will face outwards.

Q. 6.—What command will be given to the companies that are to form the side faces of the square?

A.—“*Sections outwards*”: at which they wheel outwards by sections; the sections of the right subdivisions wheeling to the right, those of the left subdivisions to the left.

Q. 7.—By whom, and when, is the word “*Sections outwards*” given to those companies?

A.—By their respective captains, as each successively arrives at quarter distance from the company in his front.

Q. 8.—Do the sections, when they have wheeled the quarter circle, get the word “*Halt, dress*”?

A.—No: the men halt without any command, and touch towards the leading company, which is considered the front of the square. Sections 2 and 3 of each company close on sections 1 and 4, immediately after completing the quarter-circle wheel.

Q. 9.—How will the two rear companies of the column proceed?

142      FORMING SQUARE FROM OPEN COLUMN.

A.—They will close up, and successively receive from their respective captains the command "*Halt. Right-about face*"; their flank files then facing outwards.

Q. 10.—When do the captains, covering-serjeants, and supernumeraries of the two rear companies, run into square?

A.—The moment the 3rd company from the rear gets the word "*Sections outwards*".

Q. 11.—Suppose an open column *on the march* is ordered to form square on its leading company, what will be the duty of the captain of that company?

A.—He will immediately give it the word "*Halt, dress*"; and, together with his coverer and the supernumeraries, will run to the rear of the 2nd company.

Q. 12.—How does the colour party act?

A.—It inclines, during the march, to the centre of the company which precedes it in column: and on the word "*Sections outwards*" wheels with, and halts in rear of, the pivot subdivision.

Q. 13.—When an open column is required to form square on the *rear* company, what caution will be given; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"*ON THE REAR COMPANY, FORM SQUARE*". All stand fast till the next word.

Q. 14.—What is the next word, and its effect?

A.—"*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*": on which the whole column faces about.

Q. 15.—At the following word "*QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH*", how does the formation proceed?

A.—The *present* leading company of the column stands fast; and the formation will then, with one exception, proceed as when square is formed on the proper leading company. (Q. 2-12.)

Q. 16.—What is that exception?

A.—Each of the side-face companies, instead of getting the word "*Sections outwards*" as it arrives at quarter

distance from the last halted company, will close on that company and then get "*Front turn. Sections outwards*": the colour party, also, turning to the front before it wheels into its place in square.

Q. 17.—*When* will the colour-party turn to the front?

A.—With the company in whose proper rear it is marching in column.

Q. 18.—What command will be given to the two proper front companies, as they close?

A.—"*Halt, front.*"

Q. 19.—If square is to be formed from open column right in front, on the *centre*, what will be the caution?

A.—"*ON THE LEFT-CENTRE COMPANY, FORM SQUARE.*"

Q. 20.—Would not the formation be on that company, if the column were *left* in front?

A.—No; it would be on the *right-centre* company.

Q. 21.—Suppose right in front:—what command will follow, and how will the formation proceed?

A.—"*RIGHT WING, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH*": at which last word the captain of the named company will instantly give "*Sections outwards*". The other companies of the left wing proceed as when square is formed on the leading company: the companies of the right wing, as when square is formed on the rear company.

Q. 22.—When an open column *taking ground to a flank by fours* is required to form square, on which company will the square be formed?

A.—Invariably on one of the two centre companies: on the left-centre if right is in front, and *vice versa* (see Q. 19, 20).

Q. 23.—What words will, in that case, be given by the battalion commander; and when will the named company get "*Sections outwards*"?



#### 144 FORMING SQUARE FROM QUARTER-DISTANCE COLUMN.

A.—“ON THE LEFT (or RIGHT) CENTRE COMPANY, FORM SQUARE. WINGS INWARDS TURN”: the captain of the named company giving “*Sections outwards*” the moment his company has turned to its front.

Q. 24.—What difference is there between the formation of square from *open*, and that from *quarter-distance*, column?

A.—In forming square from quarter-distance column, the *battalion commander* gives “SECTIONS OUTWARDS” as the 2nd company closes on the 1st.

Q. 25.—Does the cautionary command “FORM SQUARE” cause the colour party to move?

A.—Yes; it closes (or, if on the march, inclines) to the centre of the company it is following; so that it may not, while wheeling up in rear of that company, impede the wheel of the sections of the succeeding company.

Q. 26.—When do the captains, covering-serjeants, and supernumeraries of the two rear companies, get into square?

A.—When the side-face companies receive the command “SECTIONS OUTWARDS”.

Q. 27.—May a quarter-distance column also form square on its rear, or either centre, company?

A.—No: there would not be time for the necessary words of command to be given: a column at that distance will, therefore, always form square on its *proper leading* company.

Q. 28.—Suppose the column is retiring, or taking ground to a flank by fours?

A.—It will be ordered to turn to the front before the caution to form square is given.

Q. 29.—How does a *double* column of companies form square?

A.—If the column consists of ten, or more, companies, it will form square as a single column forming square on the leading company: except that the side-face companies will be ordered to bring “*Subdivisions outwards*.”

Q. 30.—But if the column consists of less than ten companies: suppose of *six*?

A.—The battalion commander will first order all the companies to form four-deep and close to the centre. On the caution to “FORM SQUARE” (or, if halted, on the word “MARCH”), the two leading companies will halt (or stand fast), forming the front face: the two next companies will move on till they arrive at *subdivision* distance from those in their front, and will then be ordered (by the captain on the left) to wheel outwards; thus forming the side faces. The two rear companies, having closed on the flanks of the side faces, will be ordered (by the captain on the left) to halt and face to the right-about.

Q. 31.—How will a double column of *subdivisions* form square?

A.—It will form on its two leading *subdivisions*, in precisely the same manner as a single column of companies forming square on its leading *company*.

Q. 32.—When a double column of companies, or subdivisions, forms square, how does the colour party get into its place in square?

A.—By doubling round the flank of the two companies, or subdivisions, immediately in its rear.

Q. 33.—Suppose the double column is one consisting of companies *less than ten in number*, and forms square (see Q. 30) accordingly?

A.—The colour party will remain in its place.

Q. 34.—Where, and how, are the mounted officers and the serjeant-major employed, when square is being formed?

A.—If the square is being formed merely for the instruction of the men, they remain outside it, placing themselves at the several angles to superintend the dressing of the men: if it were formed for actual defence, they would, of course, move into its centre.

*Section XLVIII.—A Square preparing to resist Cavalry.*

(F. E., p. 177.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when a square is to resist the attack of cavalry?

A.—“PREPARE FOR CAVALRY”: on which the 2nd and 4th ranks lock up.

Q. 2.—What position do the ranks assume at the following word “READY”?

A.—The two front ranks of each face of the square come to the kneeling position, but do not cock; the standing ranks make ready as a front and rear rank, and cock. (See Sec. XXIII. Q. 9, 10.)

Q. 3.—What commands will be given when the standing ranks of the square are to fire?

A.—“FILE-FIRING FROM THE RIGHT (LEFT, or BOTH FLANKS) OF THE FRONT (REAR, RIGHT, or LEFT) FACE.—COMMENCE FIRING”† will be given by the battalion commander.

Q. 4.—By what signal, or command, will the men *cease firing*?

A.—As the noise would prevent any word of command being heard by the men, the ‘*Cease Firing*’ is sounded on the bugle.

Q. 5.—How do the files of the firing face (or faces) act when that call is sounded?

A.—Those files that may have made ‘ready’ will half-cock, and shoulder; those whose rifles are unloaded will complete their loading, and shoulder in like manner, all independently.

Q. 6.—What command do the kneeling ranks receive, if they are required to fire; and by whom is it given?

---

† At page 376 of the *Field Ex.*, this word is given thus:—“*Commence Firing from the — of Faces.*”

A.—The command “**KNEELING RANKS** (*or* **KNEELING RANKS OF THE — FACE**), **FIRE A VOLLEY**. **AT — YARDS, READY.—PRESENT**” is given by the battalion commander.

Q. 7.—Do they resume the position of defence against cavalry immediately after firing?

A.—Yes: and remain in that position until they receive the command “**LOAD**”; when they will spring to attention at the half-face, come to the position of ‘prepare to load’ as standing ranks, and go on with their loading in quick time.

Q. 8.—When do the kneeling ranks shoulder?

A.—When they have re-loaded, and the commander of the battalion gives the word “**SHOULDER ARMS**.”

Q. 9.—Describe ‘File-firing’?

A.—On the word “**COMMENCE FIRING**”, the file on the named flank makes ready and comes to the ‘present’; the front-rank man firing first, the rear-rank man immediately afterwards: both men then return to the capping position and go on with their loading in quick time. As the flank file comes to the ‘present’ the next file makes ready, the latter coming to the ‘present’ when the former returns to the capping position. The next file, and the remainder in succession, proceed in like manner. After the first round, each file, as soon as loaded, will fire independently.

Q. 10.—To what points should attention be particularly directed, in file and volley firing?

A.—That the front rank remain perfectly steady after giving their fire, so as not to interfere with the aim of the rear rank.

Q. 11.—If a square has been ordered to prepare for cavalry, but not ordered to fire: at what word of command will the kneeling ranks rise?

A.—At the word “**ORDER ARMS**” given by the battalion commander.

*Section XLIX.—A Battalion in Square re-forming Column or Double Column.*

(F. E., p. 178.)

Q. 1.—When a square formed from a *column of companies*, or from a *double column of subdivisions*, is to be reduced, what caution is given; and to whom will it apply?

A.—“**RE-FORM COLUMN**”: which will apply to the rear sections of the side faces; to the pivot men of the sections of those faces; and to the flank men of the two front and two rear companies.

Q. 2.—How do they proceed?

A.—The rear sections of the side faces step back to the wheeling distance of the sections in their front; the pivot men of the front and rear sections of those faces face to the proper front of the column; and the flank men of the two front and two rear companies face, the former to their proper front, the latter to their proper rear.

Q. 3.—Which are the pivot men of the side-face sections?

A.—The *right-hand* men of the sections forming the right face of the square, the *left-hand* men of the sections forming the left face; those being the men on whom the sections will wheel backward in order to re-form column.

Q. 4.—What other individuals will move at the caution to re-form column?

A.—The commanders, covering-serjeants, and supernumeraries of the side-face companies; and the colour party; will necessarily step back with those sections in rear of which they are respectively posted in the square.

Q. 5.—What command is next given; and its effect?

A.—“**QUICK MARCH**”: on which the sections of the side faces of the square wheel backwards, those of the right face wheeling on their right, those of the left face on their left; and the front company (or the two centre subdivisions of the front face), and the two rear companies (or the four subdivisions of the rear face), move off to quarter distance.

Q. 6.—How do the captains, coverers, and supernumeraries move, at the word “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—The captains instantly run out and take up their covering on the pivot flanks of their companies; and the covering-serjeants and supernumeraries move quickly to their respective posts in column, taking care not to impede the wheeling of their sections.

Q. 7.—When the sections of the side faces have wheeled back into column, and the companies (or subdivisions) of the front and rear faces have acquired their proper distance, do they receive any command to halt, front, or dress?

A.—Yes: the two companies (or four subdivisions) of the rear face receive the command “*Halt; front; dress*”; and the front company (or two leading subdivisions), and all the side-face sections, “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 8.—From whom?

A.—From the captains, if the square was formed from column of companies: from the respective *left-wing* subdivision leaders if the square was formed from double column of subdivisions. (See p. 124, Q. 7.)

Q. 9.—When a square formed from double column of subdivisions, re-forms double column; how does the colour party get to its place in rear of the two leading subdivisions of the column?

A.—By doubling round the flank of the two subdivisions immediately in its front.

Q. 10.—How is a square formed from *double column of companies*, reduced?

A.—If the column consists of ten, or more, companies, and has therefore formed square as described in *Section XLVII.*, (Q. 29.), it will re-form column as explained in this *Section*: except that the side faces will wheel back by *subdivisions*; and that the two front, and four rear, companies will move off to *subdivision* distance.

Q. 11.—But if square has been formed from a double column of companies *less than ten* in number (see p. 145, Q. 30.)?

A.—The two front companies will, in that case, stand fast, their flank men facing (on the caution) to their front; and at the word “QUICK MARCH” the side faces will wheel back by *companies* into column; and the two rear companies will move off to, and halt and front (by command of the captain on the proper left) at, subdivision distance. The whole will then be ordered by the battalion commander to “RE-FORM TWO-DEEP.”

Q. 12.—How will the colour party get to its place in rear of the two leading companies?

A.—It will already be in its place. (*See p. 145, Q. 33.*)

Q. 13.—Where, and how, are the mounted officers and the serjeant-major employed, while a square is re-forming column?

A.—At the command “QUICK MARCH”, the senior major places himself in front of the pivot flank of the leading company, and corrects the covering of the captains; at the same time the other mounted officers and the serjeant-major move to the reverse flank of the column, to superintend the parallel dressing of the companies when the respective leaders give the command “*Halt, dress.*”

*Section L.—A Battalion in Line forming Square on any named Company; and re-forming Column or Line.*

(F. E., p. 180.)

Q. 1.—On which company of the battalion should this square generally be formed?

A.—On the left-centre company.

Q. 2.—What caution is given, and whom will it cause move?

A.—“ON THE LEFT-CENTRE COMPANY, FORM SQUARE”: on which the colour party will step back three paces.

Q. 3.—What command follows: and what will be its effect?

A.—“FOURS INWARDS”; on which each (except the named) company forms fours inwards, its leading four disengaging to the rear: the captain and coverer of each (except the named) company take their usual places in fours: and the colour party faces to the left.

Q. 4.—Suppose the battalion consists of *six* companies, how will the companies, at the following word “QUICK MARCH”, respectively move into square?

A.—No. 3 will move close along the rear of the named company (No. 4), and will halt and front by command of its captain: No. 5 will move into column at quarter distance in rear of No. 3, and will then get the word “*Front turn. Sections outwards*”: No. 2, will form, in like manner, in rear of No. 5. No. 6 will meet, and pass close in rear of, No. 2; and when in column, will get the word “*Halt, front.—Right-about face.*” No. 1 will move in close along the rear of, and will then get the same word as, No. 6.

Q. 5.—Suppose the battalion consists of *eight* companies:—on which company will square be formed; and in what order will the remainder move into square?

A.—Square will be formed on No. 5: the remaining companies moving into square as follows—Nos. 4, 6, 3, 7, 2, 8, and lastly No. 1.

Q. 6.—When should the captain and supernumeraries of No. 1, in both cases, run into square?

A.—Before the company that *last* brings “*Sections outwards*” gets that word.

Q. 7.—In rear of which company is the colour party’s place in square; and when does it move there?

A.—It steps off at the word “QUICK MARCH”: and halts and fronts in rear of the right-centre company.

Q. 8.—When two companies meet, how do they pass each other?

A.—Left arm to left arm.



Q. 9.—Where do the mounted officers and serjeant-major station themselves, if the square is being formed merely for the instruction of the men?

A.—The senior major places himself in front of the right of the left-centre company, the junior major in front of its left, to superintend the dressing of the side faces as the sections which compose them arrive in square: the adjutant and serjeant-major place themselves at the rear angles of the square.

Q. 10.—How is the square above described, formed into column?

A.—Precisely as explained in Section XLIX., Q. 1-8.

Q. 11.—Will it be necessary to re-number the companies?

A.—Yes; their order will have been changed, and, if they are to remain in column, they will be re-numbered from the front. (*See* p. 78, Q. 25.)

Q. 12.—If the battalion, instead of remaining in column, is to be re-formed at once into *line*?

A.—The column will be deployed (*see* Section LXIII.); the companies forming fours outwards, and moving to their original positions.

Q. 13.—What caution will be given, if it is required to form line *on the original alignment*?

A.—The leading company of the square (before forming column) will necessarily be ordered to “STAND FAST”, instead of opening out to quarter distance.

Q. 14.—Is there no simpler method than that just described, of forming square from line?

A.—Yes; unless it is necessary to open fire immediately, quarter-distance column will be formed on any named company (*see* Section LV.), and square will then be formed (as explained in Section XLVII.) on the leading company of the column.

Q. 15.—Suppose the line were wheeled into open column in order to form square, on which company would the square be formed?

## A LINE OR ECHELLON FORMING COMPANY SQUARES. 153

A.—It might be formed either on the leading company ; or according as the wheel was to the right or left, on the left-centre or right-centre company (*see* page 143, Q. 19, 20).

Q. 16.—If the wheel were to the *right*, would captains shift to the left (or proper pivot) flank of their companies ?

A.—No : when a line, or an echellon (direct or oblique), wheels into column for the purpose of forming square, the captains remain on those flanks on which they are marching.

Q. 17.—How will a square formed by either of the last-mentioned methods, be reduced ?

A.—Precisely as described in *Section XLIX. Q.*, 1-8.

---

## *Section LI.—A Battalion in Line or Echellon forming Company Squares ; and re-forming Line or Echellon.*

(F. E., p. 181.)

Q. 1.—What caution will be given by the battalion commander, when a line or echellon is to form company squares ?

A.—“FORM COMPANY SQUARES.”

Q. 2.—How, and by whose command, will each company form square ?

A.—Each company will form close column of sections and company square, by command of its captain, who will give the same words as those given by the drill instructor in *Section XXIII.*

Q. 3.—What are those words ?

A.—“*Form close column of Sections.—Quick March. —Prepare for Cavalry: Ready.*”

Q. 4.—How will the men of the 1st, 3rd, and 4th sections of each company move into column?

A.—With shouldered arms: ordering as they get into their places. *Riflemen* will fix swords: the 2nd section on the captain's word "*March*"; the remainder, when, having got into column, they order their arms.

Q. 5.—By whose command will the companies fire?

A.—By command of their respective captains, when the '*Fire*' is sounded.

Q. 6.—What word will be given by each captain when '*Cease Firing*' is sounded, and his men have completed their loading?

A.—"*Re-form column.*" (See p. 72, Q. 16.)

Q. 7.—How, and by whose command, will the original formation be resumed?

A.—The battalion commander will give the word "*RE-FORM LINE (or ECHELLON)*," on which Nos. 1, 3, and 4 sections of each company face outwards: followed by "*QUICK MARCH*," on which the companies will re-form as described in *Section XXIII.*, Q. 17—20.

Q. 8.—Suppose the battalion commander, when the companies have formed (from *line*) into close columns of sections, gives the word "*WHEEL INTO ECHELLON*"?

A.—Each captain will at once give his company, "*Column, on the move, Right wheel: Quick March*"; and when it has wheeled the eighth of a circle, "*Halt, dress.*"

Q. 9.—What will, in that case, necessarily be done before line is re-formed?

A.—The columns will be wheeled back into their former positions.

Q. 10.—By whose command?

A.—By that of their respective captains; who, on the battalion commander's caution "*WHEEL BACK INTO LINE*", will give "*To the right Face. Column, on the move, Left wheel: Quick March.—Halt, front: dress.*"

*Section LII.—A Close Column forming Square;  
and the Square being re-formed into Column.*

(F. E., p. 182.)

Q. 1.—When, only, is square formed from *close* column?

A.—When there is not time to open the column out.

Q. 2.—What command follows the caution to “FORM SQUARE”; and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“FOURS OUTWARDS”; on which the two front and two rear companies stand fast: the remainder forming fours outwards by subdivisions.

Q. 3.—How are fours formed ‘outwards by subdivisions’?

A.—On the word “FOURS”, the rear rank steps back in the usual manner: at the word “OUTWARDS”, the subdivisions of each company face outwards, and then form fours as usual.

Q. 4.—If the companies consist of an uneven number of files, will not the rear fours be incomplete?

A.—Yes: but as they will be in the centre of the square, that circumstance will be immaterial.

Q. 5.—What word is next given; and its effect?

A.—“QUICK MARCH”: on which the fours close up: and No. 2 (suppose right in front) steps back a pace and a half; No. 1, three paces. The 2nd company from the rear will face to the right-about; and the rear company will close up a pace and a half, and will then also face to the right-about.

Q. 6.—If the companies consist of an uneven number of files, and the division of the subdivisions therefore divides a right and left file, with which subdivision do those files in each company close?

A.—The right file with the right subdivision of its company, the left file with the left subdivision.

Q. 7.—Whom does the caution “RE-FORM COLUMN” cause to move?

A.—The fours will step back to their proper distance.

Q. 8.—At the word “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—The fours front, and form two-deep: No. 1 advances three paces; No. 2, a pace and a half: the rear company will retire a pace and a half, and front; and the 2nd company from the rear will front.

Q. 9.—Will the rear company, or the rear company but one, receive the word “*Front*”?

A.—Yes; from their respective captains.

*Section LIII.—A Square marching in any Direction.* (F. E., p. 183.)

Q. 1.—Can a square be moved, without first being re-formed into column?

A.—Yes; in any direction.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given, and whom will it cause to move?

A.—“THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE (RETIRE, or MOVE TO THE RIGHT or LEFT)”: on which the serjeant-major will move out and place himself on the directing flank.

Q. 3.—What command follows?

A.—“INWARDS FACE.”

Q. 4.—To ~~which~~ face, or faces, of the square will it apply?

A.—To all the faces except that which is to lead: the three former ~~facing~~ into the named direction, the face which is to lead ~~standing fast~~. (See p. 71, Q. 14.)

Q. 5.—By which flank will the square, while in motion, be directed?

A.—That will depend on the direction in which it is moving. A square if advancing marches by the left; if retiring, by the right: if moving to the right, marches by the left; if moving to the left, by the right.

Q. 6.—Who will regulate the direction?

A.—The serjeant-major, on the directing flank.

Q. 7.—To what point should attention be given, while the square is in movement?

A.—That the men of the faces moving in files do not open out.

Q. 8.—When the square gets the word “HALT, FRONT”, will the men correct their dressing?

A.—No: they will remain perfectly steady, unless ordered to close or dress.

---

*Section LIV.—A Battalion in Line forming Square Two-deep on the two centre Companies; and re-forming Line.*

(F. E., p. 184.)

Q. 1.—When is this square used?

A.—When baggage or treasure is to be protected against an attack of infantry.

Q. 2.—What caution will be given?

A.—“ON THE TWO CENTRE COMPANIES, TWO DEEP: FORM SQUARE.”

Q. 3.—Whom does that caution cause to move?

A.—The whole of the battalion, except the two centre companies.

Q. 4.—How do the other companies proceed?

A.—The two flank companies face inwards, the remainder to the right-about; that they may be in readiness to march into square when the next command is given.

Q. 5.—How do the colour party, and the captain and covering-serjeant of the left-centre company, act on the caution?

A.—The two last take three paces to the rear: the colour party steps back two paces, and then takes eight side paces to the left.

Q. 6.—Do the right-wing captains remain on the proper right of their respective companies until they arrive in square?

A.—No: they shift, by the proper rear, to the left (or inward) flanks of their companies, on the caution.

Q. 7.—Do their covering-serjeants shift with them?

A.—No: with the exception of the coverer of the right-flank company, who takes his usual place in file-marching (*i.e.* at the head of its front rank), they remain on their outward flanks. The *left-wing* coverers, except the coverer of the left-flank company, change flanks.

Q. 8.—How, and when, does the captain of the right-centre company get into square?

A.—By taking three paces to the proper rear, immediately after changing his flank.

Q. 9.—What is the next word given by the battalion commander; and to which companies will it apply?

A.—“**QUICK MARCH**”, which applies to all the companies: the two centre companies closing inwards four paces each, to fill up the interval left by the colours; the remainder moving off to form square.

Q. 10.—How do the companies which have faced about, move into square?

A.—They move across in echelon, those of the right wing wheeling to the right, those of the left wing to the left; and having wheeled up square with the centre companies, halt and front.

Q. 11.—By whose command do those companies wheel into echelon, move off when in echelon, and wheel into square?

A.—They commence wheeling into echelon without any word of command, as they step off at the word “**QUICK MARCH**”: receiving from their respective *captains* the word “*Forward*” when they have completed the eighth

of a circle; the word "*Right (or Left) wheel*" when they reach the outer flank of the company last formed in square; and "*Halt, front: dress*" when in their places in square.

Q. 12.—When do the captains of the side-face companies get into square?

A.—After giving their word "*Right (or Left) wheel.*"

Q. 13.—Are the rear angles of the square marked by the covering-serjeants of the two flank companies?

A.—No.

Q. 14.—How do those companies get to their places in square?

A.—They move inwards to form the rear face: receiving the word "*Halt: rear face*" from their respective captains, as their inward flanks meet.

Q. 15.—How should their *outward* flanks be aligned?

A.—With those of the companies forming the side faces.

Q. 16.—When a two-deep square is required to march, what command will follow the usual caution that "*THE SQUARE WILL ADVANCE*" (or as the case may be)?

A.—The battalion commander will order the faces that are to move to a flank, to form "*FOURS INWARDS*", and the face which is to be in rear to "*RIGHT-ABOUT FACE*"; and will then give "*QUICK MARCH.*"

Q. 17.—How is the square directed; and where does the colour party march?

A.—The square moves precisely as a four-deep square (*see p. 156, Q. 5*): the colour party marches in rear of the centre of the leading face.

Q. 18.—When "*HALT, FRONT*" is given, how do all the companies face?

A.—They face outwards: the side faces re-forming two deep.

Q. 19.—On the caution "*RE-FORM LINE*", who will move?



A.—The flank companies will face outwards: and the mounted officers and battalion *sides* move out of square, and act as directed in Section XXXIX., Q. 60, 62.

Q. 20.—What command follows, and what will be its effect?

A.—“**QUICK MARCH**”: on which the centre companies open out 4 paces (by command of the left-centre captain) to admit the colours, which will then move up into line: the companies forming the side faces wheel to the left and right, receiving the word “*Forward*” from their respective captains when in echelon: and the flank companies move out.

Q. 21.—How are the side-face companies of each wing led up into line?

A.—Precisely as when a double column forms line to the front on the march. (See p. 126.)

Q. 22.—Where does the covering-serjeant of each of these companies march, in moving from square into line?

A.—On the outward flank of his company, until he arrives within 20 paces of the outward flank of the company last formed in line, when he will run out, as usual, to take up his covering in line.

Q. 23.—How will the flank companies which composed the rear flank of the square, march into line?

A.—They will move across in fours to the outward flank of the companies which stand next to them when in line; will then change their direction parallel to the alignment; and, when clear of the other companies, will be halted and dressed up into line.

Q. 24.—When do the flank companies get from file into fours?

A.—Each will be ordered by its captain to form fours, when the side-face company on his flank has wheeled clear of him.

Q. 25.—Where do their covering-serjeants march?

A.—They lead the front rank of the company, as usual.

Q. 26.—Where, and how, is the serjeant-major employed during the formation of the line?

A.—Three paces in rear of the centre serjeants; dressing the supernumerary rank.

Q. 27.—When do the mounted officers, battalion *aides*, and front-rank centre serjeant, resume their post in line?

A.—When the senior major gives the word “STEADY.”

Q. 28.—How does the senior major pass to his post in line?

A.—Through the centre, as usual.

Q. 29.—How may a two-deep square be formed from line, otherwise than by the echelon movement of companies?

A.—By forming a double column of companies on the two centre companies, (*see* p. 169); and wheeling the remaining central companies outwards, those of the right wing to the right, those of the left wing to the left; the two rear companies closing up, and facing to the right-about.\*

---

*Section LV.—A Battalion in Line forming Open, Close, or Quarter-distance Column on any named Company.*

(F. E., p. 147.)

Q. 1.—What distance are the companies from each other in column at open, close, and quarter distance respectively?

A.—In *open* column, each company is distant its own breadth from the one immediately in front of it, measuring from the heels of the front rank of one to the heels of the front rank of the other: in *close* column, the companies are

---

\* This movement is not in the “Field Exercise,” being considered inapplicable on service: but it may be used when Orders, &c. are to be read.

162 FORMING COLUMN ON ANY NAMED COMPANY.

two paces distant from each other, measuring from the heels of the rear rank of one company to the heels of the front rank of the next: in a *quarter-distance* column, the space between companies will equal that occupied by each of their flank sections.

Q. 2.—Is the arrangement of the officers &c. of each company, in a close or quarter-distance column, the same as in open column (p. 76)?

A.—Yes: unless the battalion is one of a *brigade* changing position, in which case captains are on that flank of the column next to the directing battalion, irrespective of whether right or left is in front: or, unless the column is a close one taking ground to a flank by fours (*see* p. 27).

Q. 3.—Where will the band be formed?

A.—In the rear, in two ranks, when the column is alone or in a line of columns: on the reverse flank, in several ranks, when the column is in mass.

Q. 4.—Are the mounted officers posted as in open column?

A.—Yes: except that when a close or quarter-distance column is *on the march*, the major of the rear wing superintends the direction from the rear of the line of captains.

Q. 5.—How does the colour party form in *close* column?

A.—*See* Answer to Q. 20, p. 77.

Q. 6.—What caution will be given when column is to be formed on either flank company; suppose the *right*?

A.—“OPEN (CLOSE, or QUARTER-DISTANCE) COLUMN IN REAR (or FRONT) OF NO. 1.”

Q. 7.—Who will move at that caution: suppose *right* is to be in front?

A.—The captain, lieutenant, and coverer of the named company; of whom the two former change their flanks, the last moves out to the front: the senior major, the two flank *aides*, and the serjeant-major; the officer on the left of the line: and the whole of the supernumerary rank.

Q. 8.—Where does the coverer of the named company place himself: and why?

A.—Passing by the *front*, he places himself (with recovered arms) six paces in front of his captain; whom, and the distant point, he faces and covers: in order to furnish the necessary base point for the formation of the column.

Q. 9.—If the column is to be formed *left* in front, do the captain and coverer of the named company proceed as when right is to be in front?

A.—No: the captain being already on his future pivot flank, will stand fast; and the base point will be given, not by the coverer, but by the senior supernumerary serjeant, who will place himself six paces in *rear* of the captain.

Q. 10.—How do the supernumerary rank, and the officer on the left of the line, in each case, proceed?

A.—The former closes up two paces: the latter falls back into it.

Q. 11.—Where do the serjeant-major and senior major, in each case, move at the caution?

A.—The former moves to the ground on which the reverse flank of the column is to rest, ready to superintend the parallel dressing of each company as it arrives in column: the latter places himself in front or rear of the base point, according as right or left is to be in front, ready to superintend the covering of the coverers and captains.

Q. 12.—Suppose the column is to be formed on a *central*, or on the *left-flank*, company, right or left in front; how will the captain and supernumeraries of the named company proceed on the caution?

A.—Precisely as explained for those of the right-flank company.

Q. 13.—Will the supernumerary rank close up, and the officer on the left of the line fall to the rear, on the caution?

A.—Yes.

**164 FORMING COLUMN ON ANY NAMED COMPANY.**

**Q. 14.**—When column is to be formed on the *left-flank* company, by whom is the base point given?

**A.**—If *right* is to be in front, by the senior supernumerary serjeant of that company, in rear of the captain: if *left* is to be in front, by its coverer, in front of the captain.

**Q. 15.**—Where does the serjeant-major place himself, and by whom will the covering of the captains and coverers be superintended?

**A.**—The serjeant-major places himself as explained above, (Q. 11); and the junior major superintends the covering.

**Q. 16.**—Suppose the formation is to be on a *central* company; what caution will be given, and how will the coverer of the named company proceed?

**A.**—The caution will be “*OPEN (CLOSE, or QUARTER-DISTANCE) COLUMN, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT, ON No. —*”: on which the covering-serjeant of the named company will mark the future pivot flank of that company which is to form in front of his own in the column.

**Q. 17.**—How does the coverer face, in giving that point?

**A.**—He first covers on his captain, (who, if *right* is to be in front, will have changed his flank), placing himself square with the line; and then faces about to the front.

**Q. 18.**—By whom, and whence, will the covering be superintended?

**A.**—By the senior major: from the front, if the column is to be formed at close or quarter distance: from the pivot flank of the company of formation, if the column is to be an open one.

**Q. 19.**—The caution having been given, and the base point placed, what command will follow?

**A.**—The battalion commander will give “*REMAINING COMPANIES: FOURS RIGHT (LEFT, or INWARDS)*” according as the column is to be formed on the right, the left, or a central, company.

Q. 20.—Will the captains take their usual places in Fours?

A.—Yes; the captains of the companies (if any) on the right of the named one, changing flanks accordingly.

Q. 21.—By whom is the future pivot flank of the company which will form next in front or rear of the named company, marked, when the formation is on either *flank* company?

A.—If the formation is on the right-flank company, the pivot flank of the next company will be marked by its own covering-serjeant if *right* is to be in front, by the coverer of the named company if *left* is to be in front. If the formation is on the left-flank company, *vice versâ*. (See Q. 24.)

Q. 22.—When is it marked?

A.—At the word "FOURS RIGHT (or LEFT)."

Q. 23.—If the formation is on a *central* company, by whom and when, will the future pivot flank of the companies which are to form immediately in front and rear of the named one be marked; and how will the remaining companies move into column?

A.—Whether right or left is to be in front, the covering-serjeant of the named company will, on the caution, mark the future pivot flank of the company which will form in his *front* (Q. 16.): the future pivot flank of the company which will form in *rear* of the named one will be marked by its own coverer, at the word "FOURS INWARDS." The remaining companies move into column in front, or rear, of that company precisely as they form on the flank companies.

Q. 24.—How will the coverers of the remaining companies, in each case, proceed: and why?

A.—If the formation is on the *right*-flank company *right* to be in front, or on the *left*-flank company *left* to be in front; each coverer will run out to mark where the pivot flank of his own company will rest in column: but if the column is to be formed on the right-flank company *left* in front, or on the left-flank company *right* in front, he will run out to mark the pivot flank of the company

166 FORMING COLUMN ON ANY NAMED COMPANY.

that will form *in front of his own*. Each coverer is thus rendered responsible for the distance of his own company.

Q. 25.—When do the coverers run out to give their points?

A.—When within 20 paces of the pivot flank of the column.

Q. 26.—The companies having formed fours as ordered, will not each leading four disengage?

A.—Yes: whenever companies form fours in the direction of a company of formation, the leading fours disengage to front or rear as may be necessary.

Q. 27.—How does each captain conduct his company into column?

A.—If the leading flank of the company will be its *reverse* flank when formed in column, he leads his men to his covering-serjeant; he then halts, allowing them to move on past the rear of the serjeant, and in a line parallel to the leading company; and as the rear four reaches the serjeant, gives "*Halt, front: dress*" and takes post on the exact spot which the coverer will then vacate. If the leading flank of his company will be its *pivot* flank in column, the captain leads it to the spot where its *reverse* flank will rest in column; and then, changing direction, leads on the coverer who is marking the spot for his pivot flank, and on reaching him gives "*Halt, front: dress*", and falls in.

Q. 28.—What should the captain bear in mind, in giving that word?

A.—That when a company in fours comes to its front, there will always be a file to come up on its left flank. He should, therefore, give his word "*Halt*" when the company has passed the serjeant one pace, or one pace before it reaches the serjeant, as the case may be.

Q. 29.—How does a coverer giving a point for a company in column, face, and carry his arms; and when does he fall into his place in column?

A.—He gives his point with shouldered arms, facing to the front; and falls into his place in column when the company for which he is giving a point gets "*Halt, front: dress.*"

Q. 30.—The serjeant giving the base point for the column?

A.—He gives his point with recovered arms (*see* Q. 8, 9): and falls into his place in column when the major who has superintended the covering gives the word "*STEADY.*"

Q. 31.—When does the colour party face into the required direction; and how does it move into column?

A.—It faces when the remaining companies form fours; and at the word "*QUICK MARCH*" moves independently, in file, to its place.

Q. 32.—May column be formed on any named company *facing to the rear*?

A.—Yes: by the named company countermarching on its own ground; and the remainder forming fours outwards, countermarching to the right or left (according to the flank which is to be in front), and forming as described in this *Section*.

Q. 33.—In what manner, by whose command, and when, does the named company countermarch?

A.—Invariably by files, by command of its captain, when the battalion commander gives the caution to form the column.

Q. 34.—What will that caution be?

A.—"*OPEN (CLOSE, or QUARTER-DISTANCE) COLUMN ON — COMPANY, RIGHT (or LEFT) IN FRONT, FACING TO THE REAR.*"

Q. 35.—Do the captain and coverer of the named company change flanks at that caution?

A.—They will change if the column is to be formed *left* in front: for where the right of the company rested before, its left will rest after, the countermarch. (*See* p. 57, Q. 6.)

Q. 36.—How do they then proceed?

A.—As explained in *Section XVIII*.



Q. 37.—How does the named company face and countermarch, if the column is to be formed *left* in front?

A.—It faces to the *right*, and countermarches to the *left*; in order that that which is to be its pivot flank in column, may lead during the countermarch. (*See* p. 56, Q. 5.)

Q. 38.—The covering-serjeant of the named company being employed during its countermarch, who will give the base point for the column (if the formation is on either *flank* company): or mark the future pivot flank of the company that will form in front of the named one (if the formation is on a *central* company): and when?

A.—The senior supernumerary serjeant of the named company; on the battalion commander's caution.

Q. 39.—Where do the mounted officers and serjeant-major place themselves, at the caution?

A.—As when column is formed facing to the front.

Q. 40.—While the named company is countermarching, what commands are given to the remaining companies?

A.—“REMAINING COMPANIES, FOURS LEFT (RIGHT, or OUTWARDS). RIGHT (or LEFT) COUNTERMARCH, QUICK MARCH”: according to the company on which the column is to form, and to the flank which is to be in front; the companies always countermarching to the right when right is to be in front, and *vice versa*.

Q. 41.—How does the rest of the formation proceed?

A.—In precisely the same manner as when the column is formed facing to the front.

Q. 42.—What peculiarity is there in the way in which the companies (if any) that move to the rear of the line, countermarch?

A.—They countermarch round their *rear* rank.

Q. 43.—How do the colour party move into column?

A.—As a company, but in file; receiving the necessary command “*Halt, front: dress*” from the officer carrying the Queen's colour, when they arrive in column.

Q. 44.—Can a *double* column of companies, or subdivisions, be formed from line?

A.—Yes; in the same manner as a single column.

Q. 45.—On which companies, or subdivisions, of the line will it be formed; and at what distance?

A.—On the two centre companies or subdivisions; at the wheeling distance of the companies, or subdivisions, of which each single column is composed.

Q. 46.—By whom will the base point be given?

A.—By the covering-serjeant of the left-centre company, in front of his captain.

Q. 47.—If the double column is to be one of *subdivisions*, by whom will the covering and distance for the rear subdivision of each company be taken up?

A.—By its senior supernumerary serjeant.

Q. 48.—What is the general rule with respect to the front of a column?

A.—That it should always be as large as the ground will admit of.

Q. 49.—Suppose the front of an open column halted is to be diminished by the doubling of subdivisions or sections; who will give the necessary words to each company?

A.—The battalion commander will give a general word to the whole; the leaders of subdivisions or sections giving only the words "*Halt, front: dress.*" (See Sec. XIX.)

Q. 50.—How will the front of a quarter-distance column, or of a double column (suppose of subdivisions), on the march, be reduced?

A.—That of the former, by breaking off files from the pivot flanks of companies (*see* p. 65): that of the latter, by the subdivisions being diminished to sections (*see* p. 62). A double column may also, if necessary, advance in double files (or fours) from the centre: *see* p. 104. Q. 14, 15.

Q. 51.—How does a close column diminish its front?

A.—It cannot diminish its front at all while retaining that formation.

*Section LVI.—When the Order of a Column is changed by the successive march of the rear Companies to the Front.*

(F. E., p. 129.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when it is required to change the leading flank of a column?

A.—“By SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES, REAR WING TO THE FRONT.”

Q. 2.—By which flank of the column will the rear companies move up to the front?

A.—Invariably by the pivot flank.

Q. 3.—When, and by whose command, will the rear company be put in motion?

A.—On the caution; by command of its captain.

Q. 4.—How will the captain of that company act, and what commands will he give, supposing right is in front and the left is to be brought up?

A.—He will take one pace to his front, face to the right-about, and give the word “*Fours left. Quick March.*”

Q. 5.—How does he act while his company is moving out of the old column: and what word does he give when it is clear?

A.—He will stand steady till the company is clear of the column, and will then give the word “*Front turn. By the right.*”

Q. 6.—Having placed himself on the right flank of his company, how will he proceed?

A.—He will lead his company to the front, passing close by the pivot flanks of the other companies.

Q. 7.—Does he change his flank when his company arrives in line with the leading company of the former column?

A.—No: for he will already be on the proper pivot flank.

Q. 8.—When does the next, and each succeeding, company receive the command from its captain to form fours to the left, and to move out of the old column?

A.—It will get the word "*Fours left*" when the flank of the company by which it will be preceded in the new column is approaching; and the word "*Quick March*" as that company passes it.

Q. 9.—At what distance will each company follow the one in its front?

A.—At wheeling distance.

Q. 10.—Does the covering-serjeant of each company lead it, while it is moving out of the old column?

A.—No: he steps short while his company is moving out; and when the lieutenant changes his flank, takes his place.

Q. 11.—When does the lieutenant change his flank?

A.—When his captain gives "*Front turn*".

Q. 12.—How does the colour party move out of the old column?

A.—Precisely as a company, but in file.

Q. 13.—Which company will it follow in the new column?

A.—The left-centre company: seeing that left will now be in front.

Q. 14.—May a column formed at quarter distance, change its leading flank in the manner above described?

A.—Yes; but the companies will acquire wheeling distance by moving out of the old column.

Q. 15.—How is the leading flank changed *on a road* where the space will not admit of the flank movement?

A.—By the companies moving in succession from the rear to the front in *fours*: the pivot section of each (except the rear) company being wheeled up, to give room.

Q. 16.—What caution is given to effect the change of front in that manner?

A.—“BY FOURS FROM THE LEFT (or, if the column is left in front, FROM THE RIGHT), REAR WING TO THE FRONT.”

Q. 17.—To whom does that caution apply?

A.—To the commander of the rear company; who instantly gives it the words “*Fours left, Right wheel*” or “*Fours right, Left wheel*” according as right or left is in front.

Q. 18.—By whose command will the pivot section of each of the remaining companies wheel up?

A.—By that of the battalion commander; who, after giving the caution “BY FOURS, &c.,” gives the command “FOURTH (or FIRST) SECTIONS, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH”.

Q. 19.—How does the captain of each of those companies proceed, on the word “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—He wheels inwards with his pivot section; giving the word “*Halt*” as it completes the quarter circle.

Q. 20.—When does the rear company advance?

A.—When the pivot sections of the remaining companies get the word “QUICK MARCH.”

Q. 21.—Its captain then giving it the word “*Quick March*”?

A.—No; it will advance without any further word of command from its captain.

Q. 22.—How does the rear company move, at the word “QUICK MARCH”?

A.—It wheels in the named direction; and moves straight to the front, along the rear ranks of the pivot sections of the remaining companies.

Q. 23.—By whom is each succeeding company ordered to advance?

A.—By its captain.

Q. 24.—What commands does he give; and when?

A.—He will glance over his inward shoulder, and give “*Fours left. Quick March*” in time to follow the com-

pany which will precede him in column, without losing distance.

Q. 25.—Where do the captains, supernumeraries, and covering-serjeants march, while the companies are advancing along the rear ranks of the pivot sections of the remaining companies?

A.—In their usual places in Fours.

Q. 26.—When are the companies re-formed?

A.—When they have cleared the former front of the column.

Q. 27.—By whose command are they re-formed?

A.—By that of their respective captains.

Q. 28.—What command will each company receive; and how will its captain, coverer, and supernumeraries then proceed?

A.—“*Front form company.—Forward*”. (See p. 53, Q. 2-5.)

Q. 29.—When will the company which was the leading one of the old column, get that word?

A.—As soon as its leading four has gained the left (or right) of the road.

Q. 30.—Will the companies *invariably* be re-formed as each in succession clears the former front of the column?

A.—They may, if required, move on in fours.

Q. 31.—How will the colour party act in this change of the leading flank of the column, if *right* was in front?

A.—At the battalion commander's word “**QUICK MARCH**” they will move to the rear of the 3rd section of the right-centre company; and will follow in rear of the left-centre company when it passes them.

Q. 32.—If the old column was *left* in front?

A.—They will move to the rear of the 2nd section of the left-centre company; and will follow in rear of the right-centre company.

Q. 33.—Where do the mounted officers and serjeant-major march during the movement?

A.—The former move onward with the companies on the reverse flanks of which they are stationed; so as to be on the new reverse flank when the change of wings is effected: the latter marches in rear of the centre file of directing serjeants.

Q. 34.—At what distance may the column be formed, to admit of the leading flank being changed in the manner last described?

A.—At quarter, half, or wheeling distance.

Q. 35.—In changing the leading flank of a column on a road, will the rear wing always be brought to the front by *fours*?

A.—It may, if required, be brought up by *sections*; but in that case it will be necessary for the pivot subdivisions, instead of the pivot sections, to wheel up.

### *Section LVII.—A Column taking ground to a Flank.*

(F. E., pp. 131-134.)

Q. 1.—In how many ways does a column take ground to a flank?

A.—In three: viz. by the flank march of companies in fours; by the diagonal march; and by the echellon march of sections. (See Q. 24.)

Q. 2.—When are the two last-mentioned methods employed?

A.—When it is required to take ground at once to the front and to a flank.

Q. 3.—Is each of the three applicable, at whatever distance the column may be formed?

A.—No: a *close* column can only take ground to a flank by fours, or by the diagonal march; the distance between companies not admitting of the echellon march of sections.

Q. 4.—Does the proper pivot flank of a column continue the flank of direction, whether the column takes ground to that or to the reverse flank?

A.—No: the flank to which the column takes ground, will be the directing flank for the time being.

Q. 5.—When a caution, then, is given to a column to take ground to the reverse flank, do captains and their covering-serjeants shift to that flank?

A.—No: unless the battalion commander gives the word "OFFICERS CHANGE YOUR FLANKS", the captain of each company remains on its proper pivot flank; the lieutenant moving up to lead.

Q. 6.—Does the command "CHANGE YOUR FLANKS", if given, apply to the lieutenants and to the colour party?

A.—Yes.

Q. 7.—What caution is given when a column on the march is to take ground to a flank by *fours*, or by the *diagonal march*?

A.—"TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN *FOURS*" or "BY THE DIAGONAL MARCH": followed by "FOURS RIGHT (or LEFT)" or "RIGHT (or LEFT) HALF TURN", as the case may be.

Q. 8.—When a column is taking ground to a flank by *fours*, on which flank of each company does its leader (captain or lieutenant as the case may be) march?

A.—See page 26, Q. 25-27.

Q. 9.—Can an open, half-, or quarter-distance column taking ground to a flank by *fours*, be closed to less distance?

A.—Yes: by the named company stepping short while the remainder wheel their leading *fours* the eighth of a circle towards it; and each of the remainder in succession changing its direction parallel to that of the named company, and moving with a short pace till the battalion commander gives "FORWARD" to the whole column.

Q. 10.—What rule will be observed by company leaders, in such a case?



176     A COLUMN TAKING GROUND TO A FLANK.

A.—They will, if not already there, change to that flank of their leading four which is nearest to the named company.

Q. 11.—Is there any other method by which the closing may be effected?

A.—Yes; on open ground the companies may close, and open out, by the diagonal march.

Q. 12.—How may an open column taking ground to a flank by fours, be formed into line?

A.—See page 104, Q. 13.

Q. 13.—When an open column is *moving into an alignment* by the flank march of fours, by whom will the distance and covering for each company in succession be taken up?

A.—By its own coverer, who will run out to mark where its pivot flank will rest in the alignment.

Q. 14.—How will the coverer of the leading company take his distance?

A.—From the battalion *aide* at the point of formation on which the column originally marched.

Q. 15.—May the companies ever move to a flank in *file*?

A.—Only when that formation is necessary to pass through very narrow places.

Q. 16.—When a halted column is required to take ground to a flank in *echelon of sections*, what caution will be given, and how will each company move?

A.—The caution will be "TAKE GROUND TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) IN ECHELLO. ON THE MOVE, BY SECTIONS, RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL": each company proceeding as explained in *Section XXII*.

Q. 17.—Who leads the column when it takes ground to a flank by the echelon march of sections?

A.—The captain or the lieutenant of the leading company, according as ground is being taken to the pivot or to the reverse flank. (*See* page 67, Q. 5.)

Q. 18.—Do the other supernumeraries of companies place themselves on the pivot flank of their respective sections?

A.—No: they follow in rear of those files which they covered before the sections wheeled into echelon; leaving the pivot men to keep the distance and dressing. (*See* page 67, Q. 6.)

Q. 19.—What becomes the duty of the leader of the leading company when the column, having wheeled by sections into echelon, receives the word “FORWARD”?

A.—To select points perpendicularly to that front which he, and his section, will have acquired when that word is given; and to march correctly on those points.

Q. 20.—To what should the attention of the leaders of the remaining companies be directed, during the march in echelon?

A.—They should keep their covering on the leading flank of the leading company, and preserve their distance from the companies that are next in front of them when in column.

Q. 21.—When sufficient ground has been taken to the flank, what command is given in order that the column may resume its march to the front?

A.—“RE-FORM COLUMN”: and, when the sections have wheeled backward into the line of their companies, “FORWARD.”

Q. 22.—If ground has been taken to the reverse flank, when does the lieutenant of each company fall back to his post in column?

A.—When, the sections having wheeled back into the line of their companies, the column receives the word “FORWARD.”

Q. 23.—How will the colour party move, when a column takes ground to a flank in echelon of sections?

A.—They wheel up parallel to, and march in rear of, the section which precedes them in column.

Q. 24.—Is there not another method besides the three

already described, by which an open or quarter-distance column may take ground to a flank?

A.—Yes; *as an exceptional case*, an open column may take ground to a flank by subdivisions or sections; a quarter-distance column, by sections.

Q. 25.—When an open column takes ground to a flank by subdivisions or sections, where do subdivision (or section) leaders march?

A.—In their usual places in column of subdivisions (or sections, as the case may be).

Q. 26.—When a quarter-distance column takes ground to a flank by sections?

A.—In that case the captain and other section leaders of the *leading* company will march, as usual, on the pivot flanks of their sections; but the remaining captains and other section leaders will necessarily march in rear of their sections.

*Section LVIII.—A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Wheeling on a fixed and moveable Pivot.*

(F. E., p. 124.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when a column, at close or quarter distance, is to wheel to its right or left on a *fixed* pivot?

A.—“COLUMN, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL”.

Q. 2.—What changes in the column will that caution effect?

A.—The pivot man faces into the named direction, his rear-rank man uncovering; the covering-serjeant of the leading company runs out; all the companies in rear of the leading one make a half-face to the wheeling flank; and, if the wheel is to be to the pivot flank, the lieutenants move up on the reverse flanks of their companies.

Q. 3.—Which will be the pivot man of the column?

A.—The man on the right or left of the front rank, according as the wheel is to be made to the right or left.

Q. 4.—Where does the covering-serjeant of the leading company place himself?

A.—He marks the spot where the outward flank of the column will rest when the wheel is completed.

Q. 5.—If the wheel is to be made to the reverse flank, how does that coverer run out?

A.—By the front.

Q. 6.—Why do all the companies in rear of the leading one make a half-face to the wheeling flank?

A.—To prevent crowding on the inward flanks of companies during the wheel; and to enable the men to circle round more easily into the new direction.

Q. 7.—Whether the wheel is to be to the pivot or the reverse flank, how will the captain of the leading company, and those of the remaining companies, face on the caution?

A.—The captain of the leading company stands fast: each of the other captains makes the half-face with his company.

Q. 8.—Does the leading company, in all cases, commence wheeling at the command "QUICK (or DOUBLE) MARCH"?

A.—Yes.

Q. 9.—How will it wheel?

A.—Its length of pace must be proportioned to the depth of the column; so as to give the remaining companies time to circle round.

Q. 10.—On what principle will the remaining companies wheel?

A.—Each man will move round on the circumference of a circle of which the pivot man of the column is the centre: the men nearest the pivot flank of each company keeping their outer shoulder well up at the commencement of the wheel, so as to gain sufficient ground to the flank without diminishing the distance between companies.

180 A COLUMN WHEELING ON A MOVEABLE PIVOT.

Q. 11.—Suppose the wheel is made to the pivot flank, when will the captain of the leading company acquire his new front?

A.—He will move back during the wheel.

Q. 12.—What is the command given when a column *on the march* is required to wheel?

A.—The same as the *caution* given to a halted column: "COLUMN, LEFT (or RIGHT) WHEEL."

Q. 13.—Do all the companies in rear make a half *turn* to the wheeling flank, when the wheel is made on a moveable pivot?

A.—Yes; on the word "WHEEL".

Q. 14.—Will the coverer of the leading company run out to give a point?

A.—No.

Q. 15.—How will the pivot man of the column act during the wheel?

A.—He will move with a very short pace round the wheeling point, keeping his shoulders square with his company.

Q. 16.—When will the companies which made the half face (or turn) to the wheeling flank, face (or turn) to the front; and the lieutenant, if on the reverse flank, fall back to his place in column?

A.—When the column, having performed the necessary degree of wheel, receives the command "HALT" or "FORWARD".

Q. 17.—When the former of those words is given, will the men, on halting, correct their dressing?

A.—No: they will face to their proper front and remain steady, unless the word "DRESS" is given by the battalion commander.

Q. 18.—Where, and how, are the majors employed during the wheel of the column?

A.—The major of the leading wing, on the reverse flank *of the* leading company, regulating its pace: the other

major, in rear of the reverse flank of the rear company, superintending the covering of the outer files.

Q. 19.—Which is the directing flank during the wheel of the column?

A.—Whether the wheel is made on a halted or moveable pivot, each company is directed by its outward (or wheeling) flank; to the files on which, the remainder conform. The files on that flank should therefore, during the wheel, accurately preserve the same relative positions and covering on the leading company, that they held before being put in motion. If the wheel is made in accordance with that rule, the column will be prepared at any moment to form square, or perform any other movement that circumstances may require.

Q. 20.—Suppose a *double* column is required to wheel?

A.—It will, when closed to quarter or close distance, wheel as a single column.

Q. 21.—Can a close or quarter-distance column *taking ground to a flank* be wheeled to its right or left?

A.—Yes; by the leading files, fours, or sections of all the companies wheeling round the pivot, as explained in this *Section* for the leading company of a column.

Q. 22.—If a column be wheeled while moving in file or fours, where do company leaders march; and why?

A.—On that flank of their leading file, or four, which is nearest the pivot: so that they may be able to keep their distance from that point.

Q. 23.—How does an *open* column change direction?

A.—By the companies wheeling in succession, on moveable pivots, round the same point.

Q. 24.—By whom will each company be led during the change of direction, if the wheel is to the reverse flank?

A.—By the lieutenant, who will move up on its reverse flank.

Q. 25.—What rule should be observed by the lieutenants, in order that when "*Forward*" is given the pivot flanks may be in line?

A.—They should be careful to maintain the relative positions held by the reverse flanks when the column was marching by the pivot flank.

Q. 26.—Suppose the companies are of unequal strength?

A.—Weak companies should march a little past the wheeling point before they wheel: strong companies should wheel a little before they come up to it.

---

*Section LIX.—A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Countermarching by the wheel of Subdivisions round the Centre.*

(F. E., p. 127.)

Q. 1.—To whom will the caution to "COUNTERMARCH BY SUBDIVISIONS ROUND THE CENTRE," apply, if the change of front is to be effected from the *halt*?

A.—To the coverers of the front and rear companies; who place themselves, the former in front of the inner file of his reverse subdivision, the latter in rear of the inner file of his pivot subdivision: both facing inwards towards the column.

Q. 2.—Why are those coverers so placed?

A.—In order to afford points at which the subdivisions of each wing will wheel the half circle, and at which the leading subdivisions will be halted when the countermarch is completed.

Q. 3.—What command will follow (suppose the column is *right* in front); and whom will it cause to move?

A.—"RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE"; on which the named subdivisions face about, and the lieutenants place themselves on their outward flanks.

Q. 4.—The battalion commander having given the word "QUICK MARCH", will the leading subdivision of each wing be ordered to "*Wheel*"?

A.—No: all the subdivisions will wheel without any word of command, as they reach the wheeling point of their wing.

Q. 5.—Do the rear subdivisions make a half face (or turn) to the wheeling flank?

A.—No: they retain their proper front during the wheel, the whole preserving their touch to the inward flank.

Q. 6.—Do the subdivisions step short after making their wheel?

A.—No: they move to their front at a full pace.

Q. 7.—What words will next be given; and to whom will they apply?

A.—The words "HALT, FRONT: DRESS," will be given when the leading subdivision reaches the coverer of the front company; the word "FRONT" applying to the *reverse* subdivisions only.

Q. 8.—Which will be the pivot flank of the column after the countermarch?

A.—The same as before the countermarch; for the order of the companies will not have been changed.

Q. 9.—When this movement is performed on the *march*, do the coverers of the front and rear companies give their points on the caution?

A.—No: not until the next word is given.

Q. 10.—What will the next word be; suppose right in front?

A.—"RIGHT SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT-ABOUT TURN."

Q. 11.—When will the commanding officer give his word "FRONT TURN": and will that word be followed by the command "FORWARD"?

A.—He will give the word "FRONT TURN" four paces before the two subdivisions of each company become aligned; so that the reverse subdivision may complete its turn in time for the two to move on together in the new direction. No word "FORWARD" will be given. (*See p. 18, Q. 57, 58.*)



Q. 12.—Do the reverse subdivisions turn to the *right*-about, whichever flank of the column is in front?

A.—No: if left is in front, the left (or reverse) subdivisions will receive the command “LEFT-ABOUT TURN.”

Q. 13.—When do the covering-serjeants of the front and rear companies, and the lieutenants, resume their posts in the column?

A.—At the command “HALT, FRONT: DRESS”, or “FRONT TURN” as the case may be.

Q. 14.—Can a *double* column countermarch round its centre?

A.—Yes; in the same manner as a single column.

Q. 15.—By what other method may a column change its front?

A.—By countermarching: if at open, half, or quarter distance, by *files*; if at close distance, by *ranks*. (See Section XVIII.)

Q. 16.—How will the colour party, in that case, countermarch?

A.—In a column at open, half, or quarter distance, it will countermarch independently, and move across to the rear of the leading centre company: in close column, it can only face about, correcting its formation when the column opens out.

### *Section LX.—Forming Close or Quarter-distance Column from any more open Column.*

(F. E., p. 116.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given when a close or quarter-distance column is to be formed from any more open column?

A.—“THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE TO (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON) THE FRONT” or “REAR”: or, if the closing is to be on a central company, “THE COLUMN

**WILL CLOSE ON (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON) No. — COMPANY."**

**Q. 2.—**What is the effect of that caution?

**A.—**The necessary points are thrown out; and a mounted officer moves to the battalion point of *appui*, to superintend the covering of the captains as they close.

**Q. 3.—**If the column is ordered to close to quarter or close distance on the front or rear company, where does the covering-serjeant of the named company place himself?

**A.—**If the closing is to be on the leading company, he places himself six paces in front of his captain, facing towards him, and covering on the line of captains: if on the rear company, he places himself six paces in rear of his captain, covering in like manner.

**Q. 4.—**If the column is to close on a *central* company, by whom is the base point given?

**A.—**None will be required; as the captains in front and rear of the named company will be a sufficient guide to each other.

**Q. 5.—**Which will, in that case, be the point of *appui*?

**A.—**The captain of the named company.

**Q. 6.—**By what command will the caution to "CLOSE" be followed?

**A.—**"REMAINING COMPANIES, QUICK MARCH": preceded by the command "RIGHT-ABOUT FACE" to those companies, if any, in front of the named one.

**Q. 7.—**When does the covering-serjeant who has given the base point, if one has been given, resume his place in column?

**A.—**At the field officer's word "STEADY".

**Q. 8.—**Where, and how, is the serjeant-major employed while the column closes?

**A.—**On the reverse flank of the column; correcting, if necessary, the parallel dressing of the companies as they are halted by their captains.

Q. 9.—If the column is *advancing*, by what command does it close on the leading company?

A.—“THE COLUMN WILL CLOSE TO (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON) THE FRONT.”

Q. 10.—What will become the duty of the captain of the leading company, when that command is given?

A.—To give his company “*Halt, dress.*”

Q. 11.—Will the covering-serjeant of the leading company, in that case, give a base point?

A.—Yes: when the captain of that company gives “*Halt, dress*”, the coverer steps out and gives a point in the same manner as when the column closes from the halt.

Q. 12.—May a column on the march close *without halting*?

A.—Yes; on its leading company.

Q. 13.—What caution will be given?

A.—“ON THE MARCH, CLOSE TO THE FRONT (or TO QUARTER DISTANCE ON THE LEADING COMPANY).”

Q. 14.—Does that caution effect any change in the column?

A.—No: the column moves steadily onward until the following command “REMAINING COMPANIES, DOUBLE” is given; when every company (except the leading one, which continues to move in quick time) moves off at the double march, till, having gained the required distance, it receives from its captain the word “*Quick*”.

---

*Section LXI.—A Close or Quarter-distance  
Column Opening from the Front, the  
Rear, or any named Company.*

(F. E., p. 118.)

Q. 1.—To whom will the caution that the column is to open out to quarter, or wheeling, distance from the *front*, apply?

A.—To the covering-serjeant of the leading company, who places himself, as a base point, six paces in front of his captain, whom (and the remaining captains) he will face towards, and cover: to the rear battalion *aide*, who runs out to give a distant point: and to the field officer who is to superintend the captains' covering, who places himself at the battalion point of *appui*.

Q. 2.—When the column is cautioned to open out from the *rear*, by whom are the base and distant points given?

A.—The base point is given by the covering-serjeant of the rear company, six paces in rear of his captain: the distant point, by the front battalion *aide*.

Q. 3.—Who will halt each company when it has acquired the named distance?

A.—When the column opens from the *front*, each company receives from its *own* leader the command "*Halt, front, dress*": but when the opening is from the *rear*, each captain will give the word "*Halt*" to the company in his front.

Q. 4.—In opening from the front, on what point will the leader of the rear company march, after all the companies (except the leading one) have been faced about?

A.—On any point he may select, at arm's length from the rear battalion *aide*.

Q. 5.—How will the captain of each company that has been faced-about, know when to give his word "*Halt, front*"?

A.—The number of 30-inch paces required for the front of any company, will be obtained with sufficient accuracy by multiplying the number of its files by 7, and cutting off the right-hand figure of the result. A company leader, therefore, having once ascertained the number of paces required for the front of his company, can at any time, by counting his paces, take wheeling, half, or quarter distance from the company next in his front or rear.

Q. 6.—When will he, in the present instance, commence counting his paces?

A.—When the company in his proper front is halted.

Q. 7.—If the rear companies, in opening from the front, have to pass over rough or broken ground which cannot be measured by pacing, what will be each of their covering-serjeants' duty?

A.—To run out when the company in his proper front is halted; and placing himself at the ordered distance, clear of the flank of the column, to mark the ground in a line with which his captain will give the command "*Halt, front: dress.*"

Q. 8.—When will he return to his post in column?

A.—Immediately his captain has given that word.

Q. 9.—When the opening is from the *rear*; on what point will the captain of the leading company march, and how does each captain proceed when his company is halted by the captain next in rear (Q. 3)?

A.—The captain of the leading company marches on any casual object at arm's length from the front battalion *aide*. Each captain, when, having himself been halted, he has at the proper time given "*Halt*" to the company in his front, will face about, correct his covering on the base points, front, and give "*Dress*" to his own company.

Q. 10.—When the opening is from a *central* company, how does the movement proceed?

A.—The companies in front of the named one proceed in precisely the same manner as when the column opens from the rear; those in rear as when the opening is from the front: the two flank *aides* give the distant points: and a mounted officer places himself at the battalion point of *appui*, to superintend the captains' covering.

Q. 11.—Which will be the battalion point of *appui*?

A.—The captain of the named company.

Q. 12.—When will the mounted officer, and the *aide* employed in giving points, return to their posts in the column?

A.—When the former has given the word "*STEADY.*"

Q. 13.—Can a close or quarter-distance column on the march, be opened from the front without halting?

A.—Yes; by the leading company continuing its march, and each of the remainder marking time till, having by that means gained the required distance, it receives the word “*Forward*” from its captain.

Q. 14.—Could the column be opened from the *rear* in like manner?

A.—No; the rear company would be halted by its captain; and the movement would then proceed as when done from the halt. (Q. 3, 9.)

Q. 15.—When a halted close, half, or quarter-distance column (suppose right in front) is required to *advance at more open distance* from the front, what caution or command will be given; and how will the movement proceed?

A.—The battalion commander will give “ADVANCE BY SUCCESSIVE COMPANIES FROM THE FRONT, AT QUARTER (or WHEELING) DISTANCE.—No 1, QUICK MARCH”. The leading company having gained the required distance, the captain of the 2nd company will give it the word “*Quick March*”; and so on in succession to the rear of the column.

Q. 16.—If the opening is to be from the rear?

A.—The column will be faced about: and the rear company will be the first marched off.

*Section LXII.—A Battalion in Line changing Front by the intermediate formation of Open Column on any named Company.*

(F. E., p. 169.)

Q. 1.—How is the front of a line changed by the intermediate formation of open column?

A.—Simply by forming open column on the named company (*see* Section LV.), right or left in front according to the flank to which the position is to be changed, and to the flank of the line which is to be thrown back or

forward; and by wheeling the column, when formed, into line (*see* Section XXVI.).

Q. 2.—When will the column be formed *right*, and when *left*, in front?

A.—When the change of front is to be to the right, the column will be formed left in front; and *vice versa*.

Q. 3.—Will the caution specify which flank of the line is to be thrown forward or back?

A.—No; such a caution would be superfluous.

Q. 4.—Is any arrangement necessarily made, previously to the formation of the column?

A.—Not if the new line is to be at right angles with the old line; but if it is to be formed obliquely, the company on which the column is to be formed must wheel backward so many paces as will make it perpendicular to the new alignment.

Q. 5.—When, and by whose command, will the named company (if necessary) wheel back?

A.—On the caution; by command of its captain.

Q. 6.—How will the captain of that company know whether to wheel it back, or not?

A.—If the change of front is to be at right angles to the old line, the battalion commander will caution the named company to "STAND FAST": whenever that caution is *not* given, the named company will have to be wheeled back.

Q. 7.—On which of its flanks will the named company be wheeled back?

A.—On its right if the change of front is to be to the right; and *vice versa*.

Q. 8.—What rule will be observed by the captain of the named company with respect to changing his flank: and how will he order the company to wheel?

A.—He will change, on the caution, to that which will be his proper pivot flank in the column: and will order the company to wheel '*On the move*'.

Q. 9.—In these changes of front, which will be the point of *appui* of the new line?

A.—That flank of the named company which is the point of intersection of the old and new lines.

Q. 10.—Will the point of *appui* be marked, and a distant point be given by a battalion *aide*?

A.—Yes; and when the formation is on either flank company, a point will also be placed 15 or 20 paces beyond the flank, to determine the direction of the new alignment.

Q. 11.—When the change of front is on a central company, and obliquely to the old line, by whom is the new direction given?

A.—By the covering-serjeant of the named company, who will mark the covering and distance for the company that is to form, in the column, next in front of his own.

Q. 12.—How do the mounted and company officers, the serjeant-major, and the covering-serjeants proceed, during the formation of the column, and in the wheel into line?

A.—Precisely as explained in *Sections* LV. and XXVI.

Q. 13.—Is there not a method by which the object of this movement may be effected more quickly than by the two distinct operations of forming column and wheeling into line?

A.—Yes; the company of formation may be wheeled by its captain into line the moment the new alignment is taken up: the remaining companies moving, in fours, to the front (or rear, as the case may be) of the old, and forming into the new, alignment.

Q. 14.—How do the remaining companies form in the new line?

A.—If moving to the *front* of the old alignment, they will each, as they reach their coverer, be ordered by their captain to "*Front form company*": if moving to the *rear* of the old alignment, they will move round their coverers; march straight on the flank of the company next to them already in line; and when in their place, will respectively get the word "*Halt, front: dress.*"



*Section LXIII.—A Column, at Close or Quarter distance, Deploying into Line.*

(F. E., p. 163.)

Q. 1.—On the base of which company of the column are all deployments made?

A.—Invariably on the base of the front company.

Q. 2.—How does each (except the named) company move out of column?

A.—At whatever distance the column may be formed, the companies will move out in fours; unless the ground should render it necessary to move in files.

Q. 3.—To which flank of the column do the companies form fours?

A.—To the pivot flank; unless the caution to deploy is preceded by the words "IN INVERTED ORDER." (Q. 29.)

Q. 4.—What caution is given when a column at close or quarter distance, right in front, is required to deploy on its leading company; and to whom will that caution apply?

A.—"DEPLOY ON THE LEADING COMPANY": on which the captain and lieutenant of the leading company change their flanks; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company mark the base points, the former in front of its left, the latter in front of its right, flank; the front battalion *aide* marks the point of *appui*, the rear *aide* running out to give the distant point; and the senior major places himself on the right of the base points.

Q. 5.—Why do not the captains of the rear companies change flanks?

A.—Because they are already on those flanks of their companies which will lead during the deployment.

Q. 6.—If the column were left in front, which of the majors would dress the coverers?

A.—The junior major, from the left.

Q. 7.—When the column is to deploy on any other than the leading company, what changes take place on the caution?

A.—The captains, covering-serjeants, and lieutenants of the companies in front of the named one, change their flanks; the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the named company run out (the former by the pivot, the latter by the reverse, flank of the column), and give points close in front of the flank files of the *leading* company. The right and left *aides* mark the right and left of the battalion; and if the deployment is to be on a central company, the centre *aide* also gives a point at arm's length from the supernumerary serjeant of the named company.

Q. 8.—Opposite to which flanks of the leading company do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the named company place themselves, to give the base points; and how do they face?

A.—The coverer gives his point opposite to the reverse flank; the supernumerary serjeant, opposite to the other flank. They both face to the point of *appui*: facing, therefore, towards each other if the formation is on a central company (*see* page 119, Q. 58).

Q. 9.—By which of the majors will the coverers be dressed, if the deployment is on the rear company?

A.—By the junior major from the left, if right is in front; by the senior major from the right, if left is in front.

Q. 10.—If the formation is on any central company?

A.—Whether the column is right or left in front, the senior major will dress the coverers from the centre *aide*.

Q. 11.—By whom will he be assisted?

A.—By the serjeant-major; who will, for that purpose, move up to the reverse flank of the leading company.

Q. 12.—The caution to deploy having been obeyed by every person to whom it applies, what follows?

A.—The remaining companies will be ordered by the battalion commander to form fours to that flank to which they are to deploy.

Q. 13.—Suppose the formation is on the front or rear company, how do the captains act at the command "FOURS LEFT (or RIGHT)"?

A.—The captain of the named company stands fast: the captain of the company immediately in rear (or front) of the named one, takes a pace to his front and faces to the right-about; the remainder place themselves on the pivot flank of their leading fours.

Q. 14.—The covering-serjeants?

A.—The covering-serjeant of the named company, who is giving a base point, will, of course, stand fast. If the deployment is on the front company, the coverer of the company next in rear runs out to mark where its left or right flank (according as the column is right or left in front) will rest in line: the remainder take their usual places in fours.

Q. 15.—If the column is to deploy on its leading company, how does the captain of the named company proceed when "QUICK MARCH" is given to the remaining companies; and how is each of those companies led up into line?

A.—The captain of the named company dresses it; gives "*Eyes front*"; and, if on the left, changes his flank. The captain of the company next in rear of the leading one stands fast, and allows his company to move onward a space equal to its front: he then gives it the word "*Front turn*", and when at two paces from the alignment, "*Halt, dress up*". Each of the succeeding captains, when he hears the word "*Front turn*" given to the company on his inward flank, halts, and proceeds in the same manner.

Q. 16.—Who leads each company when its captain halts?

A.—The covering-serjeant.

Q. 17.—Where does each captain place himself when he gives his word "*Front turn*"?

A.—On the inward flank of his company: marching on that flank till he arrives at two paces from the alignment. He then gives it the command "*Halt, dress up*"; places himself in front of the 2nd file from the outward flank of the company which preceded him into line; and having dressed his men on his covering-serjeant and the distant battalion point, and given "*Eyes front*," takes post in line.

Q. 18.—Which is the 'inward' flank of each company during the deployment?

A.—That which is nearest to the point of *appui*: being the flank next to the company on which the column deploys, whether that company is a flank or central one.

Q. 19.—Does the captain of each company *invariably* order it to turn to its front the moment its rear four reaches him?

A.—No; if the fours are marching at incorrect distances (as may unavoidably happen in marching over rough or broken ground), the word “*Front turn*” must be given when the *leading* four has moved on to the company’s distance from the captain; irrespective of the position of the fours in rear.

Q. 20.—What point should be attended to by captains, if their companies have formed fours to the *left*?

A.—They should, in giving their word “*Front turn*”, make allowance for the file which will come up on the left of the preceding company. (*See* p. 166, Q. 28.)

Q. 21.—Should any one of the captains allow his company to march on a greater space than is necessary, before he gives the word “*Front turn*”, what will become the duty of the succeeding captain?

A.—To give his own command “*Front turn*” as much too soon, as the captain of the preceding company gave that word too late.

Q. 22.—Should that rule not be observed, what consequences will result?

A.—The whole of the companies in rear of that one with whose leader the error originated, will, in marching up into line, have to oblique to the inward flank: causing, thereby, much unsteadiness and retarding the completion of the deployment.

Q. 23.—When do the covering-serjeants (except the coverer of the named company and of that next to it) run out to give their points?

A.—When they arrive at 20 paces from the alignment.

Q. 24.—When the deployment is on the leading company, which flank of their companies will be marked by the coverers?

A.—The left if the column was right in front: and *vice versa*.

Q. 25.—If the column deploys on the rear, or on a *central* company, when will the named company and those in its front be marched up into line?

A.—When their fronts are cleared by those companies by which they are respectively preceded in the column.

Q. 26.—Is the named company marched up into line at the same degree of march as the other companies?

A.—No: it is marched up in *double* time, in order that it may be dressed on the base before any of the other companies arrive in line.

Q. 27.—Which flank of their companies will be marked by the covering-serjeants when they run out?

A.—If the deployment is on the rear company of a column right in front, they mark the right flank of their companies; if left in front, the left flank. When a column deploys on a *central* company, the companies in rear of the named one move as when the deployment is on a front company; those in front as when the deployment is on a rear company.

Q. 28.—When the captains are in front dressing their men, by whom are their places in line preserved?

A.—See p. 120, Q. 69.

Q. 29.—How does the colour party, in each of the above cases, get to its place in line; and by whom will it be dressed?

A.—It faces into the required direction when the companies form fours; steps off at the word "QUICK MARCH", and deploys independently. When the deployment is on the leading company, the colour party will be dressed by the captain of the left-centre or of the right-centre company, according as the column was right or left in front: in deploying on the rear company, *vice versa*.

Q. 30.—When does the supernumerary rank of each company correct its distance from the rear rank?

A.—If the formation is on the leading company, it steps back as its rear is cleared by the companies deploy-

ing : if the formation is on the rear company, it gains its distance as it halts in line.

Q. 31.—When do the mounted officers, coverers, and *aides*, and the band ; move to their posts in line ?

A.—The mounted officers, coverers, and *aides*, as described in *Section XXXIX.*, Q. 21, 23, 24 : the band, &c., during the movement.

Q. 32.—How will a column deploy “IN INVERTED ORDER” ?

A.—It will deploy to its reverse flank : the effect of which will be that the proper right-flank company will be on the left, the proper left-flank company on the right, of the line.

Q. 33.—Suppose a column right in front is ordered to deploy in inverted order on its leading company ; to which of the captains and coverers will the caution apply, and how will the serjeants giving the base points face ?

A.—The captains and covering-serjeants of the companies in rear of the leading one, shift to their reverse flanks ; and the serjeants giving the points in front of the leading company face to the left, that being the point of *appui*.

Q. 34.—If the (inverted) deployment is to be on any other than the leading company, which of the captains will change flanks on the caution ?

A.—Those of the companies, if any, in *rear* of the named company.

Q. 35.—In what other way can a column deploy in inverted order on its *leading* company ?

A.—By any named number of companies moving out, and forming on the right of that company ; the remainder forming on its left.

Q. 36.—What will the caution be in that case ?

A.—“DEPLOY ON No. 1 : Nos. ——— COMPANIES FORMING ON THE RIGHT, REMAINDER ON THE LEFT.”

Q. 37.—Can a *double* column be deployed into line ?

A.—Yes ; at quarter or close distance, it may deploy on

its two centre companies (or subdivisions) in the same manner as a single column.

Q. 38.—By whom will the base points be given?

A.—By the centre serjeant, and the coverers of the two centre companies. (See *Section XLII.*, Q. 10-12).

Q. 39.—In what case will it be necessary for a double column to deploy both wings in the same direction?

A.—When it moves up to either extremity, instead of to the centre, of the intended alignment.

Q. 40.—On which of its companies or subdivisions will each wing deploy?

A.—The wing that deploys *first*, on its rear company or subdivision: the other wing, on its leading company or subdivision.

#### *Section LXIV.—Oblique Echellon Movements and Formations.*

(F. E., pp. 186-199.)

Q. 1.—How is an oblique echellon formed from line, for the purpose of taking ground diagonally to the front and to a flank?

A.—By wheeling the *companies*, if the echellon is to be formed of companies, forward, any degree less than the quarter circle: if the echellon is to be formed of *subdivisions* or *sections*, they will always be wheeled forward the eighth of a circle.

Q. 2.—How are all the component parts of an echellon placed when moving to a flank; and why must they always be wheeled less than the quarter circle?

A.—Since each company, or part of a company, will move on a line perpendicular to its own front, all the component parts of the echellon must be *parallel to each other*, in order that their lines of direction may also be parallel. A quarter-circle wheel would place the companies (or their parts) not in echellon but in open column.

Q. 3.—When a battalion is required to wheel into echelon of *companies* to either flank, on fixed pivots, what caution is given?

A.—“WHEEL INTO ECHELLON OF COMPANIES TO THE RIGHT (*or LEFT*).”

Q. 4.—Do the captains move at the caution to wheel into echelon?

A.—That depends on the flank to which the echelon is to be formed: if it is to be formed to the *right*, they stand fast; but if to the *left*, they change to that which will become the inward flank of their companies.

Q. 5.—Which is the ‘inward’ flank of a company wheeled forward from line into echelon?

A.—That on which it wheels into echelon; the opposite being termed the ‘outer’ flank.

Q. 6.—Who else will move at the caution to form the echelon?

A.—The major nearest the flank of the line to which the echelon is to be formed, moves up on that flank: *see* Q. 10.

Q. 7.—What is the next word given, and by whom?

A.—“COMPANIES, — PACES TO THE RIGHT (*or LEFT*) WHEEL”; by the battalion commander.

Q. 8.—How will the captain, coverer, and pivot man of each company act, on that caution?

A.—As described in *Section IX.*, Q. 3.

Q. 9.—Does the coverer commence taking his paces the instant he arrives at the 8th file?

A.—No: the whole of the covering-serjeants will first glance their eyes to the flank to which the companies are to wheel; in order to take the time from the serjeant on that flank of the line.

Q. 10.—Will the coverers be dressed?

A.—Any slight correction in their covering that may be necessary, will be made by the major on the flank to which the companies are to wheel up.

Q. 11.—When the companies receive the command “QUICK MARCH”, how do the captains act?



A.—They merely face towards their companies, ready to give "*Halt, dress*" at the completion of the wheel.

Q. 12.—Where are the captain and covering-serjeant of each company posted in echellon: and at what distance is the supernumerary rank?

A.—The captain on the inward, the coverer on the outward, flank of the company (Q. 5); aligned with the front rank: the supernumerary rank is one pace distant, as in column.

Q. 13.—When do the coverers place themselves on their outward flanks?

A.—When their respective captains, having dressed their companies, give the word "*Eyes front.*"

Q. 14.—Is an echellon of subdivisions, or sections, formed in the manner above described for an echellon of companies?

A.—No: an echellon of subdivisions (or sections) is always formed on '*moveable*' pivots.

Q. 15.—Who guides the battalion while in echellon of companies?

A.—The captain of the leading company: who should, therefore, carefully select points to march on, perpendicular to that front which his company has acquired by wheeling into echellon.

Q. 16.—How does the leader of each of the other companies preserve his distance and oblique covering, during the advance of the echellon?

A.—By looking along the line of pivots in the direction towards which the battalion is inclining.

Q. 17.—What distance does he keep from the inward flank of the company in his front; that of his own company, or that of the preceding one?

A.—That of the company in his front.

Q. 18.—Where do the mounted officers march?

A.—The major of the wing nearest the directing flank places himself in rear of the captain of the leading company, whose direction he superintends: the other major and the adjutant look to the covering of the line of pivots.

**Q. 19.**—When a line is wheeled forward into echellon of companies, subdivisions, or sections, on *moveable* pivots, on which flank of their company will each captain and coverer march?

**A.**—If the echellon is one of *companies* the captain will march on his inner flank, changing to that flank (if not already there) on the caution: the coverer falls in on the outer flank at the word “**FORWARD**”. In an echellon of *subdivisions*, or *sections*, to whichever flank formed, both captain and coverer retain the places they occupy in line. (*See* p. 67, Q. 4, 5.)

**Q. 20.**—By whom will an echellon of subdivisions, or sections, be led; and who will be responsible for distance and dressing?

**A.**—By the leader (captain or pivot file as the case may be) of the leading subdivision or section. If the echellon is formed to the *left*, the pivot men of *all* the subdivisions (or sections) will keep their dressing and distance in the line of pivots: if it is formed to the *right*, the captain of each company will keep the distance and dressing of his right subdivision, or section, the left subdivision (or each of the remaining sections) being led by its pivot man. (*See* Section XXII., Q. 7, 8.)

**Q. 21.**—How do the colour party proceed, when a battalion wheels into echellon?

**A.**—They wheel up, and form a section of themselves; occupying the same position whether the echellon is formed of companies, subdivisions, or sections.

**Q. 22.**—Suppose a battalion is required to wheel into echellon to the rear?

**A.**—It will be faced about; and the companies (subdivisions, or sections) will be wheeled forward, rear rank in front.

**Q. 23.**—Should the companies, having been halted, be required to wheel back into a line parallel to that from which the echellon was formed, what caution will be given by the battalion commander?

**A.**—“**WHEEL BACK INTO LINE**”.

Q. 24.—Do the covering-serjeants, on the caution to wheel back into line, run out to measure to the rear the same number of paces which they before measured to the front?

A.—No: if they are not already on the right of their companies, they shift by the rear to that flank, and remain aligned with the front rank until their respective captains take their places.

Q. 25.—Do not the captains, then, if the left had been the inward flank in echelon, shift to the right on the caution to re-form line?

A.—No: they will merely take a pace to their front, and face towards their companies; and when they have halted and dressed them in line, and given the word "*Eyes front*", will *then* fall in on the right.

Q. 26.—How do the pivot men act, on the caution to wheel back into line?

A.—They will face into the line, raising their right hands; and will be dressed by the major on the directing flank.

Q. 27.—How does the colour party get to its place in line?

A.—It wheels back into line, with the companies, at the word "*QUICK MARCH*"; and takes up its dressing with the company that wheels back to it from echelon.

Q. 28.—May line be re-formed in like manner, *on the march*?

A.—Yes: the captains marking time, and their companies wheeling back on them into line.

Q. 29.—When will the captains, if the wheel into echelon was made to the *left*, change to their right flanks?

A.—When the battalion commander, on the completion of the wheels backward into line, gives the word "*FORWARD*".

Q. 30.—Should it be required to form the line *obliquely* to the original line, what previous arrangement will necessarily be made?

A.—That depends on the degree of obliquity at which the new line is to be formed with the old one.

Q. 31.—Suppose the line is to be formed in the prolongation of the leading company as it stands in the echellon?

A.—In that case, the remaining companies, in order to acquire the degree of echellon necessary for forming in the intended direction, must wheel backward, on their pivot flanks, half the number of paces they originally wheeled from line into echellon.

Q. 32.—But if *those companies* already stand at the degree of echellon necessary for forming in the intended direction, what arrangement will be made previously to marching them up into line?

A.—The *leading* company of the echellon will, in that case, be wheeled forward on its pivot flank the same number of paces which it originally wheeled from line into echellon: the remaining companies standing fast.

Q. 33.—Is there not a case in which all the companies, except that of formation, may have to be wheeled *forward* before they can be marched up into line; and, if so, how many paces will they wheel?

A.—Yes; if the company of formation, in wheeling from the echellon into the new alignment, takes *more* paces than the number it originally wheeled into echellon, all the remaining companies must be wheeled up *half the number* of the *extra* paces taken by the company of formation.

Q. 34.—Under what rule do the three last-mentioned cases come; and what is the object of the rule?

A.—Under the rule that the company of formation must be wheeled up from the original alignment at double the angle that the remaining companies are wheeled; *or*, the remaining companies be wheeled to half the angle that the company of formation is wheeled. The object of the rule is to place the companies which move up to form line, *perpendicular to the lines by which they must march to their points of formation*: for each company in echellon must, in order to get to its place in line, form a right

angle with a line drawn from its own inner flank to the outward flank of the company last formed in line.

Q. 35.—Suppose an echelon originally formed by the companies wheeling six paces forward to the right from line, is required to form line on its leading company as it stands; what caution will be given by the battalion commander?

A.—“FORM LINE ON THE LEADING COMPANY” followed by “REMAINING COMPANIES, THREE PACES ON THE RIGHT BACKWARDS WHEEL”. (See Q. 31.)

Q. 36.—Who will move on the first caution?

A.—The *aide* who has to give the distant point will move out to the left of the new alignment.

Q. 37.—When, and how, do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation give the base points?

A.—When the remaining companies have wheeled into echelon, and, having been dressed, have got the word “*Eyes front*”: the covering taking the flank furthest from the captain; and facing (as usual), as does also the supernumerary serjeant, to the point of *appui*.

[Q. 38.—Suppose the company of formation were *wheeled up* (see Q. 32), when would its coverer and supernumerary serjeant place themselves as base points in front of its flank files?

A.—When it had wheeled up the ordered number of paces, and got the word “*Halt.*”]

Q. 39.—How do the captain and coverer of each of the remaining companies proceed, when those companies, on the word “FORM LINE: QUICK MARCH”, march up into line?

A.—Precisely as when the rear companies of an open column move up to form line on its front company. (See Section XXXIX., Q. 20—22.)

Q. 40.—Do the mounted officers, and the serjeants marking the base of formation, resume their places in line; and does the colour party move up into line; as in the *Section* just referred to?

A.—Yes.

Q. 41.—For what other purpose, besides taking ground to the front and a flank, is the oblique echelon used?

A.—For changing the front of a line.

Q. 42.—May the echelon, in that case, be composed either of companies, subdivisions, or sections?

A.—No; the echelon will always be formed of *companies*.

Q. 43.—Will the echelon be formed on fixed, or on moveable, pivots?

A.—It may be formed on fixed, but as a general rule will be formed on moveable, pivots; for the sake of expedition.

Q. 44.—On what company can the change of front be made?

A.—On any company, or on the centre of the battalion.

Q. 45.—Mention the cases in which that flank of the line which is opposite the flank of formation, will be thrown *forward* and *back*?

A.—If the change of front is on the *right-flank* company to the *right*, or on the *left-flank* company to the *left*, the opposite flank will be 'thrown forward': if the change of front is on the *right-flank* company to the *left*, or on the *left-flank* company to the *right*, the opposite flank will be 'thrown back'.

Q. 46.—If the change of front is on a central company, or on the two centre companies?

A.—One flank of the line will in that case be thrown forward, the other back: the right being thrown forward, and the left back, if the change of front is to the *left*; and *vice versa*.

Q. 47.—When the formation is to be *on moveable pivots*, by whom, and when, will the base company be wheeled into the new alignment?

A.—By its captain, on the caution.

Q. 48.—Will he order the company to wheel '*On the move*'?

A.—Always; unless, the change of front being *at right angles*, the company has to wheel the quarter circle. (See p. 28, Q. 6.)

Q. 49.—When the battalion commander intends the line to change front at right angles, what will he state in his caution?

A.—To the usual caution that the right (or left) is to be “thrown forward (or back)”, he will add the words “THE QUARTER CIRCLE.”

Q. 50.—If the formation is on either of the flank companies, suppose the right, and the opposite flank of the line is to be thrown *back*; what word will be given by the captain of the company of formation?

A.—“No. 1, *On the right backwards wheel. Right-about face. Quick March*”, or “No. 1, [*†Right-about face.*] *On the move; on the right backwards wheel. Quick March*”, according as the change of front is to be at right angles, or obliquely, to the old line. (Q. 48.)

Q. 51.—When a battalion *on the march* is ordered to change front on either flank company without halting, how will that company wheel?

A.—It will wheel at the double, in order that it may be halted and dressed in time for the remaining companies to form upon it.

Q. 52.—When the change of front is on a flank company, the opposite flank thrown *forward*, how do the remaining companies, having been wheeled into echelon and got the word “FORWARD”, form up into the new line?

A.—Precisely in the same way as the rear companies of an open column forming line on its front company. (See p. 114, Q. 22.)

Q. 53.—But if the opposite flank is to be thrown *back*, and the remaining companies wheel into echelon rear rank in front?

---

† This word will be given if the wheel is to be more than the eighth, and less than the quarter, of a circle.

A.—In that case, those companies will form up in line as the remaining companies of an open column forming line on its *rear* company. (See p. 118, Q. 53, 54.)

Q. 54.—What command will be given to the remaining companies by the battalion commander, in the two cases mentioned in Q. 52 and 53?

A.—In the former, "REMAINING COMPANIES, ON THE MOVE, RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD": in the latter, "REMAINING COMPANIES, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE. ON THE MOVE, LEFT (*or* RIGHT) WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD."

Q. 55.—What precaution must, in the latter case, be observed by the coverers giving the intermediate points?

A.—In giving their points they must leave room for their companies to pass clear of them; and when their companies have passed to the rear of the alignment, must take a pace to their present front (without losing their covering) in order not to interfere with the pivot flank of the next company.

Q. 56.—How will the colour party move into line?

A.—As an independent section in the echelon: and will be dressed by the captain of that centre company which wheels upon it into line.

Q. 57.—When the change of front is on a central company, how will its captain order it to wheel: and from which flank will he dress?

A.—He will order it to wheel "*On the centre*"; and will dress it from the flank that wheels forward. (See p. 38, Q. 16.)

Q. 58.—Supposing front to be changed on the centre of the battalion, by whom will the two centre companies be wheeled into the new alignment; and on what pivot will they wheel?

A.—They will be ordered to wheel ("*On the centre*") by the left-centre company's captain; and the front-rank man of the inner file of the company that wheels forward will be the pivot.



Q. 59.—Does the rule about giving “*On the move*” (Q. 48) apply equally when the formation is on a central company, or on the two centre companies?

A.—Yes.

Q. 60.—How are the base points given, when the change of front is on a central company?

A.—Its coverer gives his point on the flank that wheels forward, the supernumerary serjeant on the opposite flank; the centre *aide* giving his point at arm's length from the coverer.

Q. 61.—When front is changed on the two centre companies, whence will they be dressed; and how are the base points given?

A.—The centre serjeant steps out from between the colours, and gives a centre point; the coverer of each centre company gives his point on its outward flank, facing inwards; and the two captains then dress their companies from the centre serjeant.

Q. 62.—Where does the centre *aide* give his point; and who takes the centre serjeant's place when he steps out of the colour party?

A.—At arm's length from the centre serjeant: whose place, when he steps out, is taken by his rear-rank man.

Q. 63.—What commands will be given to the remaining companies by the battalion commander, when the change of front is on the centre of the battalion, or on a central company?

A.—“LEFT (*or* RIGHT) WING, RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”, or “COMPANIES ON THE LEFT (*or* RIGHT), RIGHT-ABOUT FACE”: followed by “ON THE MOVE, INWARDS WHEEL. QUICK MARCH.—FORWARD.”

Q. 64.—How will the companies thrown into echelon form up in line?

A.—Those that are faced about, as when the formation is on a flank company the opposite flank thrown *back*: the remainder, as in the same formation with the opposite flank thrown *forward*.

Q. 65.—In the above formations (Q. 41—64), when do the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the company of formation (or the coverer of each of the two centre companies) give their base points?

A.—When that company (or those two companies), having been wheeled into the alignment, get “*Halt.*”

Q. 66.—By what rule will the battalion commander be guided, in giving his word “FORWARD” to the remaining companies?

A.—By that explained in the Answer to Q. 34.

Q. 67.—When will the captains of those companies place themselves (if not already there) on their ‘inner’, and the coverers on their ‘outward’, flanks?

A.—The former, on the caution; the latter, at the word “FORWARD.”

Q. 68.—Suppose the change of front is to be effected by echelon formed on *fixed* pivots, by whose command will the coverer of the company of formation step his paces from the 8th file?

A.—By that of the battalion commander, who will place himself at the point of *appui*.

Q. 69.—Will the battalion commander, supposing the change of front is to be *oblique* to the old line, specify the number of paces to be stepped by the coverer?

A.—No; he will order him to halt when he reaches the intended alignment.

Q. 70.—When the named company is to be wheeled *back* (less than the quarter circle), in which case the coverer will, of course, wheel from the *rear* of the 8th file, what rule will be observed by the battalion commander in halting the coverer?

A.—He will halt him at sufficient distance beyond the alignment to allow for the depth of the two ranks.

Q. 71.—When will the coverers of the remaining companies commence stepping their paces; and how will the coverers and pivot men of those companies (if any) which are ‘thrown *back*’ proceed?

A.—The coverers of the remaining companies commence stepping their paces at the battalion commander's word "**—PACES TO THE RIGHT (or LEFT) WHEEL**". The coverer and pivot man of any company that is faced about and 'thrown back' will act as explained in *Section IX.*, Q. 18, 19.

Q. 72.—In all the above-mentioned formations, how do the mounted officers and battalion *aides* proceed?

A.—Precisely as has been explained in *Section XXXIX. (An Open Column forming Line.)*

Q. 73.—How may square be formed, during a change of front in echelon?

A.—All the companies may be wheeled 'up into open column towards the point of formation, and then ordered to form square (*see Section XLVII.*) on the leading company: or the companies in echelon may form independent company squares (*see Section LI.*)

### *Section LXV.—Direct Echelon Movements and Formations.*

(F. E., p. 200.)

Q. 1.—What caution is given to a battalion in line, in order to advance in direct echelon of companies from a flank?

A.—"**THE BATTALION WILL ADVANCE IN DIRECT ECHELLON OF COMPANIES, AT WHEELING (or—PACES) DISTANCE, FROM THE RIGHT [or LEFT]**".

Q. 2.—By what will the battalion commander be guided, in specifying the distance at which the companies are to march off?

A.—If it is his intention to re-form line parallel to the original alignment, he may order the companies to march off at any named distance: if he intends to change front to either flank at right angles, the companies must be marched at wheeling distance.

Q. 3.—Who will move at the caution?

A.—The officer on the left of the line will fall back into the supernumerary rank. The other changes will depend on the flank whence the advance is to commence.

Q. 4.—Suppose the advance is to be from the *left*?

A.—All the captains change to the left of their companies. The covering-serjeants do not change flanks with their captains: but each (except the coverer of the right-flank company) takes a pace to the rear, to let the captain of the company on his right move up on its left; placing himself on the right of the front rank of his company when it moves out clear of the rest of the line.

Q. 5.—Why do the captains shift to the left of their companies?

A.—Because the left will be the inward flanks, and consequently their proper posts in the echellon. (Q. 8.)

Q. 6.—If the companies are to advance from the *right*, to whom does the caution apply?

A.—To the covering-serjeants, who change to the left (which will, in that case, be the outward) flank of their companies.

Q. 7.—If the coverers change their flanks, do they move up on the flank to which they have changed?

A.—No: they remain in rear until their respective companies move out.

Q. 8.—Which is the directing flank of the leading company, and the 'inward' flank of each of the remaining companies, in direct echellon?

A.—The outward is the directing flank of the leading company: the 'inward' flank of each of the remaining companies is that which is next to the company in its front.

Q. 9.—The captains or covering-serjeants (as the case may be) having changed flanks, what follows?

A.—The captain of the company on that flank whence the advance is ordered to commence, gives the word "*By the —. Quick March*" and leads straight to his front.

Q. 10.—By whose command, and when, will each of the remaining companies advance?

A.—By that of its captain; when the company which is to precede it in the echelon has acquired the named distance.

Q. 11.—How should each captain give the word "*Quick March*" to his company, so that the men may step with those of the company in their front?

A.—He must observe how the men of that company are stepping; and give the word "*Quick*" as their *left* feet, and "*March*" as their *right* feet, are being placed on the ground.

Q. 12.—How does the colour party move, in direct echelon?

A.—If the advance commences from the right, it follows in rear of the left of the right-centre company; if from the left, it follows in rear of the right of the left-centre company.

Q. 13.—Who guides the advance of a direct echelon?

A.—The commander of the leading company.

Q. 14.—Suppose the battalion is cautioned to "*RETIRE*" in direct echelon of companies?

A.—The companies will be faced about in succession, and marched off one after the other at the ordered distance; by their respective captains. If the retreat is to commence from the left, the captains; if from the right, the coverers; change flanks on the caution: in the latter case, each coverer, on changing his flank, will place himself on the left of his *rear* rank, so as not to interfere with the captain of the company on his left.

Q. 15.—Suppose the echelon, while advancing, is cautioned to form line on its *leading* company, what will become the duty of the captain of that company?

A.—To halt his company; dress it on the base and distant points, which will be thrown out as usual; and (if not already there) to change to his right flank.

Q. 16.—When do the coverer and senior supernumerary serjeant of the leading company place themselves, as base points, in its front?

A.—At their captain's word "*Halt, Dress*".

Q. 17.—Do the covering-serjeants of the other companies run out in the usual manner to give points for their companies to form upon?

A.—Yes: as their companies respectively arrive within 20 paces of the alignment; taking post in line, as usual, when the 2nd company on their outward flank receives the word "*Eyes front*".

Q. 18.—May the echelon form line in the same manner on any other of its companies?

A.—Yes: those companies which are in front of the named one facing (or turning) to the right-about, and marching into the alignment.

Q. 19.—Suppose the echelon, halted, is to form line on its *rear* company; when will the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of that company give the base points?

A.—On the battalion commander's caution "**RE-FORM LINE ON THE REAR COMPANY**".

Q. 20.—Will the captains change flanks?

A.—Yes; according to the general rule. (*See* p. 113, Q. 17.)

Q. 21.—If line is to be re-formed on a *central* company, by whom are the base points given?

A.—By the coverer and supernumerary serjeant of the named company, as usual.

Q. 22.—Where do the *aides* place themselves?

A.—The centre *aide* places himself in front of that flank of the company of formation which was the pivot in echelon: the other *aides* mark the right and left of the line as usual,

Q. 23.—If the echelon is *on the march* when cautioned to re-form line on a central, or the rear, company; when will the named company be ordered by its captain to halt?

A.—At the battalion commander's word "**COMPANIES IN FRONT (or REMAINING COMPANIES), RIGHT-ABOUT TURN**".

Q. 24.—May the echelon form line at right angles to the original alignment?

## 214 RE-FORMING LINE FROM DIRECT ECHELLON.

A.—Yes: it may form line to that flank opposite to the one from which the advance was made, provided the companies marched off at wheeling distance. (Q. 2.)

Q. 25.—How will the formation proceed?

A.—The battalion commander will give "FORM LINE TO THE RIGHT (*or* LEFT). BY COMPANIES, RIGHT (*or* LEFT) WHEEL": and, the companies having completed the quarter circle, "FORWARD". Line will then be formed on the leading company, which will be halted and dressed, in the usual way, by its captain.

Q. 26.—When the echellon thus wheels to a flank, do captains and covering-serjeants change their flanks?

A.—Yes: during the wheel.

Q. 27.—Why do they change flanks?

A.—Because when a direct echellon wheels to a flank, those which were the 'inward', become the 'outward', flanks of companies.

Q. 28.—Will the colour party shift to the rear of that company which, before, it preceded?

A.—Yes: it will make a change corresponding with that made by the echellon.

Q. 29.—When will it make that change?

A.—During the wheel of the companies to the named flank.

Q. 30.—When a battalion in direct echellon is required to form line *in an oblique direction*, how will the new alignment be determined?

A.—The directing flank of the leading company will be taken as the first point in the intended line: and the coverer of that company will then move back, and cover, at wheeling distance from its pivot flank, in the required direction.

Q. 31.—What caution will then be given by the battalion commander; and to whom will it apply?

A.—"FORM OBLIQUE ECHELLON ON THE LEADING COMPANY": on which the coverer of each of the remaining companies runs back and marks the point on which the

pivot flank of the company next in his rear will rest, taking wheeling distance. Having taken his distance and covering, he will face in the same direction as the leading company.

Q. 32.—By whose command will the remaining companies be marched on the coverers?

A.—By that of the battalion commander, who will give “REMAINING COMPANIES, RIGHT (or LEFT) HALF FACE. QUICK MARCH”: each captain giving “*Halt, front: dress*” as his leading file reaches the coverer who is marking the pivot flank of his company.

Q. 33.—What change will have been effected in the echellon by this movement?

A.—The *direct* will have been converted into an *oblique* echellon, which may be wheeled back into line (*see* p. 201): and the line so formed will be oblique to the original alignment.

Q. 34.—How may a direct echellon form square?

A.—By wheeling the companies the eighth of a circle to the directing flank, the echellon will be converted into an open column which may form square in the usual way. (*See* Section XLVII.)

Q. 35.—When the echellon, having wheeled into column in order to form square, receives the word “FORWARD”, do the captains, if not already there, shift to the proper pivot flank of their companies?

A.—No: they remain on that flank on which they were marching in the echellon.

Q. 36.—How will the colour party act?

A.—It will wheel as a company, and move into square in the rear of that company which it followed in the echellon.

Q. 37.—Suppose the echellon is halted, and ordered to form column in rear of the leading, in front of the rear, or on a central, company; how will the formation proceed?

A.—It will, in all respects, proceed as when column is formed from line on any named company. (*See* Sec. LV.)



## METHOD OF PROVING A COMPANY.

---

The Company having been told off (*see page 2*), will be proved as follows:—

*Mark time: Quick. Subdivisions, right wheel: (When in echellon)—Mark time. Re-form Company.*

*Subdivisions, left wheel: (When in echellon)—Mark time. Re-form Company.*

*Sections, right wheel: (When in echellon)—Mark time. Re-form Company.*

*Sections, left wheel: (When in echellon)—Mark time. Re-form Company.*

[The Company will then be turned to the right-about, and proved as above, rear-rank in front.]

*Halt, front.*

*Fours, deep. Front.*

*Fours, right. „*

*Fours, left. „*

*Fours, about. „*

The Company will also be proved, rear rank in front, in forming fours on the march: as follows:—

*Mark-time. Quick.*

*Right-about turn.*

*Fours, right. Rear turn.*

*Fours, left. Rear turn.*

*Halt, front.*

---

*Form close column of Sections: Quick March.*

*Re-form Company: Quick March.*

*As the right-centre Company of a quarter-distance Column.—On the leading Company, Form Square: Quick March. Sections outwards.*

*Re-form Column: Quick March. Halt, dress.*

---

*Right Sections (1st and 3rd), Order Arms. Left Sections (2nd and 4th), Order Arms.*

*Right Subdivision, Stand at Ease. Left Subdivision, Stand at Ease.*

---

## WORDS OF COMMAND FOR THE *MANUAL* AND *PLATOON*.

---

**THE** Company (or Line) being at open order, with bayonets **unfixed** and shouldered arms, the following cautions and commands will be given :—

[Cautions are printed in *Italics*: the figures in brackets shew the number of motions.]

### *Manual Exercise in Slow time—*

1. Secure Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (3).
2. Order Arms (3)—Fix Bayonets (4)—Shoulder Arms (3).
3. Present Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (2).
4. Port Arms (2)—Charge Bayonets (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).
5. Advance Arms (3)—Order Arms (3).
6. Advance Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (3).
7. Support Arms (3)—Stand at Ease (1)—Attention (1).
8. Carry Arms (3).
9. Slope Arms (1)—Stand at Ease (1)—Attention (1).
10. Carry Arms (2).

(For the Short Rifle.)

1. Secure Arms (2)—Shoulder Arms (2).
2. Order Arms (2)—Fix Swords (3)—Shoulder Arms (2).
3. Present Arms (3)—Shoulder Arms (2).
4. Port Arms (2)—Charge Swords (1)—Shoulder Arms (2).
5. Slope Arms (3)—Stand at Ease (1)—Attention (1).
6. Carry Arms (3).

---

*Rear rank take Close order.—March.*

*Platoon Exercise in Slow time—*

Prepare to load (2).

Load (5).

Rod (2).

Home (4).

Return (2).

Cap (6).

*Fire a Volley, at — yards. Ready (1).*

Present (5).

*In Quick time: Load (5, & cap 6).*

Shoulder Arms (2).

Order Arms (3 or 2). [Unfix Swords.]

Stand at Ease.

---

One pause of Slow time should be made between the first and last parts of each word of command both in the *Manual* and *Platoon*: except in the command to *Fix bayonets* (or *swords*), in which a longer time must be given.

## DEFINITIONS AND DERIVATIONS.

- 
- Alignment* . . . See page 46, Q. 1.
- Appui, Point of* . From the French *appui*, a support. See p. 112, Q. 11.
- Base Point* . . . The point on which a formation takes place. See p. 163, Q. 8.
- Battalion* . . . A Regiment; or any one battalion of a Regiment consisting of two (or more) battalions. "The unit of the modern tactical System."—*Aide Mémoire*.
- Battalion aides* . In each Battalion, three non-commissioned officers provided with small flags, told off to take up the general or brigade alignment in formations.
- Brigade* . . . [Fr. *brigade*. Ital. *brigata*.] Two, or more, Regiments (or battalions of different Regiments) acting together under the command of one officer, termed a Brigadier.
- Cadence* . . . The Time of Marching (see p. 14, Q. 18). The lengths of the plummets used for swinging the three different cadences of marching are (in inches and hundredth-parts of an inch) as follows:—

	Inches.	100ths.
For <i>Slow</i> time .	24	96
„ <i>Quick</i> time .	12	03
„ <i>Double</i> time .	6	26

- Column* . . . A succession or row of companies, subdivisions, or sections, each arranged in the same manner. [A double Column is formed of two separate successions or rows of companies (or parts of different companies), one on the flank of the other.]
- Defile* . . . . From the French *défilé*. A narrow pass.
- Deployment* . . From the French *déployer*, literally 'to display, unfold'.
- Diagonal March* A march by which ground is taken at once to a flank and to the front, at an angle of 45° with the perpendicular direction of the original front.
- "*Dress*" . . . From the French *redresser* 'to straighten'. The word given to the men of a company, subdivision, or section, to correct their position on being halted after a movement.
- Drill* . . . . From an obsolete French word *drille* 'a soldier'. Instruction and practice of military movements, and positions, &c. "All Drill may be carried on as a series of changes on the different elements: Line, column, square: Line, square, column: Column, line, square, &c."—*Aide Mémoire*.
- Echellon* . . . From the French *échelon*, literally 'a round of a ladder'. A formation in which the successive companies of a Battalion are placed parallel to one another, but no two on the same alignment. An Echellon is termed 'direct' or 'oblique' according to the position of its component parts with reference to the original front of the line.

- Evolution* . . . [Lat: *evolutus*.] A movement by which troops change their position for attack or defence. By Tactics, as distinguished from Strategy, is meant the art of handling troops, *i.e.* of applying in the presence of an enemy the evolutions men have been taught at drill. Strategy, the science of conducting the great operations of war; movements that take place out of sight of the enemy.
- File, A* . . . [Fr: *file*. Lat: *filum*.] Two men, a front-rank man and his rear-rank man, who always work together; one being in rear of the other in advancing or retiring, one on the side of the other in taking ground to a flank.
- Firelock* . . . *i.q.* the French *fusil*. A general term for musket; now becoming obsolete. [The 7th, 21st, and 23rd Regiments were the first armed with firelocks: and were thence styled 'Fusiliers'. The same title is borne by the 5th and 87th Regiments.]
- Inner flank* . . . In *Line*, the flank nearest the point of *appui*: in *Column*, the pivot flank: in *Echellon*, see p. 199, Q. 5; p. 211, Q. 8.
- Line* . . . . The formation in which troops display their front in its whole extent, with their minimum depth of formation.
- Manceuvre* . . . *i.q.* *Evolution*.
- Outer flank* . . . That opposite to the 'inner' flank.
- Pivot* . . . . The flank man on which a company, subdivision, or section, wheels.  
[For the 'pivot flank' in *Column*, see page 42, Q. 19.]

- Platoon* . . . From the French *peloton*, literally 'a ball, or pellet.' A small body of Infantry. The word is no longer retained except in the term 'Platoon Exercise.'
- Reverse flank* . . . That opposite to the pivot flank.
- Section* . . . The fourth part of a Company.
- Skirmishing* . . . [Fr: *escarmouche*. Ital: *scaramuccia*.] Fighting in loose order;—'Light Drill.'
- Squad* . . . From the French *escouade*. A small number of men, less than a Company, formed for the purpose of instruction in Drill, and interior economy.
- Staff Officers* . . . In a Regiment (exclusive of mounted officers): the Paymaster, Surgeon, Assistant - Surgeon, and Quartermaster.
- Staff Serjeants* . . . The Armourer - Serjeant, Quartermaster-Serjeant, Hospital-Serjeant, Paymaster's Clerk, Orderly-room Clerk.
- Subaltern* . . . [Fr: *subalterne*.] Any military officer under the rank of Captain.
- Subdivision* . . . The half of a Company.
- Supernumerary* } A rank composed of subalterns and  
*Rank* . . . } non-commissioned officers, three paces from the rear rank when a company is in line, one pace when in column or echellon.

## NEW MILITARY WORKS

SOLD BY

W. CLOWES & SONS, 14, CHARING CROSS,  
LONDON, E.W.

---

THE FOLLOWING BY CAPTAIN MALTON.

COMPANY AND BATTALION DRILL ILLUSTRATED. In strict accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY. *Fourth Edition. With 60 Plates. In Cloth, 10s.; post-free, 10s. 6d.*

---

SINNOTT'S MILITARY CATECHISM: adapted to the revised system of the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Thirteenth Edition. 1860. In Cloth, 3s.; post-free, 3s. 4d.*

---

LIGHT DRILL: in accordance with the FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF INFANTRY. 1860. *With 8 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. In Cloth, 2s. 6d.; post-free, 2s. 8d.*

---

THE DUTIES OF COVERING-SERJEANTS in Company and Battalion Drill, in accordance with the revised Field Exercise. *Second Edition. In Cloth, 1s. 6d.; post-free, 1s. 7d.*

---

THE A B C OF SKIRMISHING: being the Light Infantry Movements of a Company; in accordance with the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *Second Edition. With 2 Plates, and the Bugle Sounds. In Cloth, 1s.; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

---

COMPANY MANŒUVRES: or, Suggestions for Company Drill on the System laid down in the Field Exercise and Evolutions of Infantry. *In Cloth, 1s.; post-free, 1s. 1d.*

---



NEW MILITARY WORKS.

THE FIELD EXERCISE AND EVOLUTIONS OF  
INFANTRY, as revised by Her Majesty's Command, 1859.  
*Third Edition. In Cloth, 4s. ; post-free, 4s. 8d.*

---

BATTALION DIAGRAMS of the principal Evolutions, extracted  
from the revised FIELD EXERCISE BOOK, 1859. By COLONEL  
LYSONS, C.B., Assistant Adjutant-General. *On Linen, 5s. 6d. ;  
folded in Case, 6s. ; post-free, 4d. extra.*

---

THE INSTRUCTION OF MUSKETRY, as used at Hythe. 1859.  
*In Cloth, 1s. ; post-free, 1s. 2d.*

---

A MUSKETRY CATECHISM: for the Use of both Services and  
Rifle Clubs. By CAPTAIN COLES, Instructor of Musketry,  
Hythe. *Third Edition. In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 1d.*

---

MILITARY EXAMINATION FOR JUNIOR OFFICERS OF  
INFANTRY, comprising 600 Questions and Answers on Disci-  
pline, Drill, Interior Economy, Field Fortification, Reconnoitring,  
&c. Prepared by direction of COLONEL SIR J. E. ALEXANDER,  
14th Regiment. *Second Edition. In Cloth, 2s. ; post-free, 2s. 2d.*

---

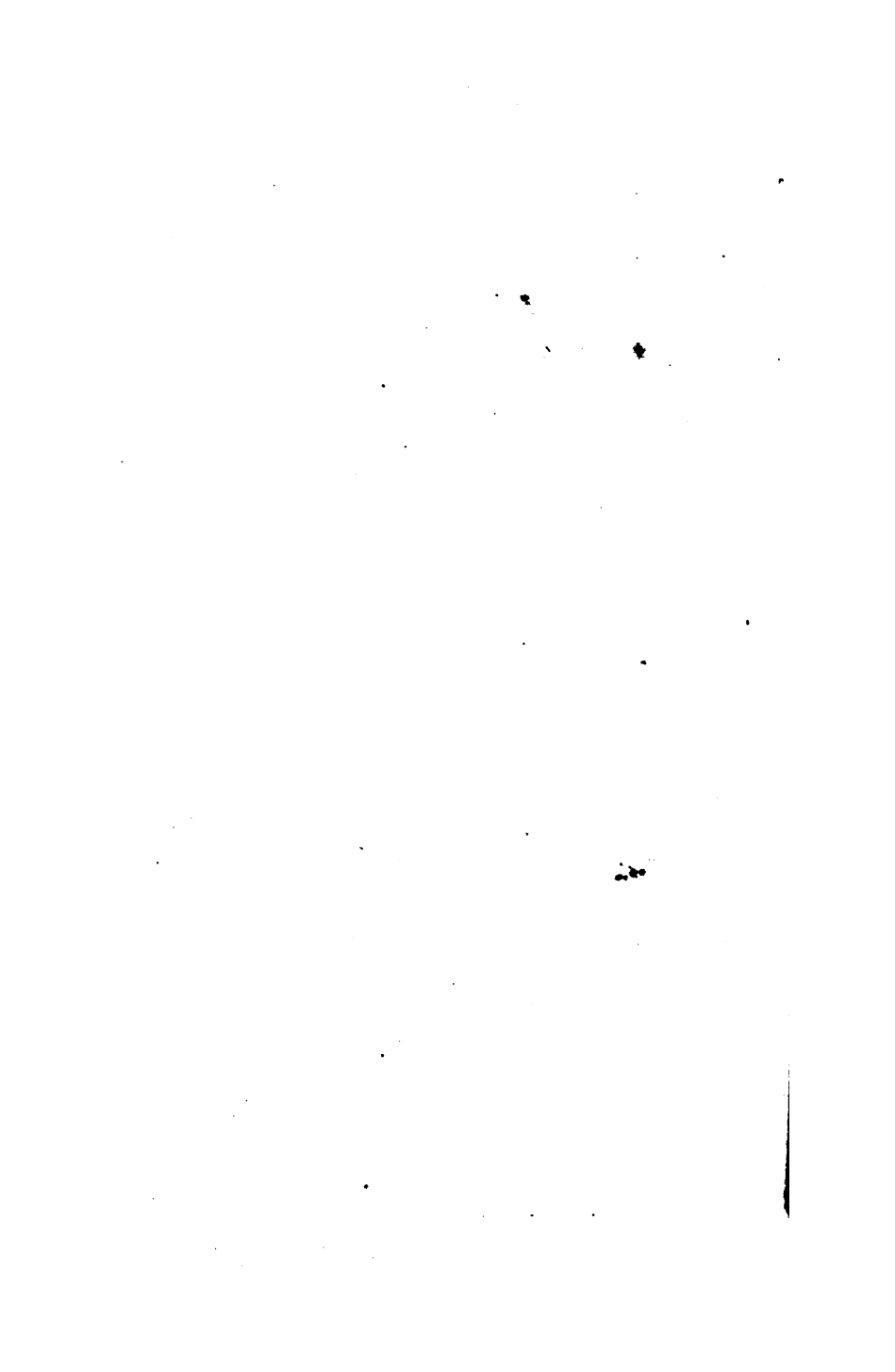
DRILL AND RIFLE INSTRUCTION FOR THE CORPS OF  
RIFLE VOLUNTEERS. By Authority of the Secretary of  
State for War. *Ninth Edition. In Cloth, 6d. ; post-free, 8d.*

---

MANUAL OF DRILL FOR HEAVY GUNS, FOR THE  
VOLUNTEER ARTILLERY. *1s. 4d. ; post-free, 1s. 6d.*

---

London: WILLIAM CLOWES and Sons, Military Publishers,  
14, Charing Cross, S.W.



1

2



